

TEI-ish internal schema for Slovene IMPACT historical language resources

Tomaž Erjavec, tomaz.erjavec@ijs.si

2012-04-03

TEI-ish internal schema for Slovene IMPACT historical language resources Tomaž Erjavec, JSI April 2012

This file is a TEI P5 schema for encoding resources of historical language for three text types:

- Linguistically annotated textual corpora, where text tokens are also marked up with non-TEI attributes, such as PoS/MSD tags and modern day equivalents;
- Lexica/dictionaries, containing lemmas with their historically attested forms and corpus examples;
- Digital library editions, which can contain facsimiles and transcriptions.

The schema is meant to encode internal resources of historical Slovene, produced in the scope of the EU project IMPACT "Improving Access to Text" and the Google research award "Developing Language Models of Historical Slovene".

1 Elements

<TEI> (TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, comprising a TEI header and a text, either in isolation or as part of a <teiCorpus> element. [4. 15.1.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

@version specifies the major version number of the TEI Guidelines against which this document is valid.

Status Optional

Datatype data.version

Note The major version number is historically prefixed by a P (for Proposal), and is distinct from the version number used for individual releases of the Guidelines, as used by (for example) the source of the <schemaSpec> element. The current version is P5.

Members contained by

core: teiCorpus

May contain

header: teiHeader

iso-fs: fsdDecl

textstructure: text

transcr: facsimile sourceDoc

Declaration

```
element TEI
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute version { data.version }?,
  ( teiHeader, ( ( model.resourceLike+, text? ) | text ) )
}
```

Schematron <s:ns prefix="tei" uri="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/>

Schematron <s:ns prefix="rng" uri="http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0"/>

Example

```
<TEI version="5.0" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <teiHeader>
    <fileDesc>
      <titleStmt>
        <title>The shortest TEI Document Imaginable</title>
      </titleStmt>
      <publicationStmt>
        <p>First published as part of TEI P2, this is the P5
          version using a name space.</p>
      </publicationStmt>
      <sourceDesc>
        <p>No source: this is an original work.</p>
      </sourceDesc>
    </fileDesc>
  </teiHeader>
  <text>
    <body>
      <p>This is about the shortest TEI document imaginable.</p>
    </body>
  </text>
</TEI>
```

Note This element is required.

<ab> (anonymous block) contains any arbitrary component-level unit of text, acting as an anonymous container for phrase or inter level elements analogous to, but without the semantic baggage of, a paragraph. [16.3.]

Module linking

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declaring (@decls) att.fragmentable (@part)

Member of model.pLike

Contained by

core: item note q quote said sp stage

corpus: setting settingDesc

figures: figure

header: application availability cRefPattern calendar change correction editionStmt editorialDecl encodingDesc handNote hyphenation interpretation licence normalization prefixDef projectDesc publicationStmt quotation refsDecl samplingDecl segmentation seriesStmt sourceDesc stdVals styleDefDecl

textstructure: argument body div epigraph postscript
transcr: metamark
May contain
analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w
core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr
q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear
dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar
figures: figure formula notatedMusic table
gaiji: g
header: biblFull idno
iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib
linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline
textstructure: floatingText
transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo
Declaration

```
element ab
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.fragmentable.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```
<div n="Genesis" type="book">
  <div n="1" type="chapter">
    <ab>In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth.</ab>
    <ab>And the earth was without form, and void; and
      darkness was upon the face of the deep. And the
      spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters.</ab>
    <ab>And God said, Let there be light: and there was light.</ab>
  </div>
</div>
```

Note The <ab> element may be used at the encoder's discretion to mark any component-level elements in a text for which no other more specific appropriate markup is defined.

<abbr> (abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort. [3.5.5.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.typed (~~type~~, @subtype)

@type allows the encoder to classify the abbreviation according to some convenient typology.

Derived from att.typed

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Note The type attribute is provided for the sake of those who wish to classify abbreviations at their point of occurrence; this may be useful in some circumstances, though usually the same abbreviation will have the same type in all occurrences. As the sample values make clear, abbreviations may be classified by the method used to construct them, the method of writing them, or the referent of the term abbreviated; the typology used is up to the encoder and should be carefully planned to meet the needs of the expected use. For a typology of Middle English abbreviations, see PETTY

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.editorial

Contained by

analysis: cl pc phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyp h iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage

iso-fs: fDescr fsDescr

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

element abbr {

```
att.global.attributes,  
att.responsibility.attributes,  
att.typed.attribute.subtype,  
attribute type { data.enumerated }?,  
macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<choice>  
  <expn>North Atlantic Treaty Organization</expn>  
  <abbr cert="low">NorATO</abbr>  
  <abbr cert="high">NATO</abbr>  
  <abbr cert="high" xml:lang="fr">OTAN</abbr>  
</choice>
```

Example

```
<choice>  
  <abbr>SPQR</abbr>  
  <expn>senatus populusque romanorum</expn>  
</choice>
```

Note The <abbr> tag is not required; if appropriate, the encoder may transcribe abbreviations in the source text silently, without tagging them. If abbreviations are not transcribed directly but *expanded* silently, then the TEI header should so indicate.

<activity> contains a brief informal description of what a participant in a language interaction is doing other than speaking, if anything. [15.2.3.]

Module corpus

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.settingPart

Contained by

corpus: setting

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expn foreign gap gb gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

dictionaries: lang

figures: figure notatedMusic

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

transcr: addSpan am damageSpan delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst substJoin

Declaration

```
element activity { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq.limited }
```

Example

```
<activity>driving</activity>
```

Note For more fine-grained description of participant activities during a spoken text, the `<event>` element should be used.

<add> (addition) contains letters, words, or phrases inserted in the text by an author, scribe, annotator, or corrector. [3.4.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes `@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@rend`, `@style`, `@rendition`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) (`att.global.change` (`@change`)) `att.transcriptional` (`@hand`, `@status`, `@cause`, `@seq`) (`att.editLike` (`@evidence`, `@source`, `@instant`) (`att.dimensions` (`@unit`, `@quantity`, `@extent`, `@precision`, `@scope`) (`att.ranging` (`@atLeast`, `@atMost`, `@min`, `@max`, `@confidence`))) (`att.responsibility` (`@cert`, `@resp`))) `att.placement` (`@place`) `att.typed` (`@type`, `@subtype`)

Member of model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: cl pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hypth iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: am damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace subst supplied surplus zone

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element add
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.transcriptional.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}
```

Example

The story I am going to relate is true as to its main facts, and as to the consequences <add place="above">of these facts</add> from which this tale takes its title.

Note The <add> element should not be used for additions made by editors or encoders. In these cases, either the <corr> or <supplied> element should be used.

<addSpan/> (added span of text) marks the beginning of a longer sequence of text added by an author, scribe, annotator or corrector (see also <add>). [11.3.1.4.]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.transcriptional (@hand, @status, @cause, @seq) (att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant)) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope)) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp))) att.placement (@place) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.spanning (@spanTo)

Member of model.global.edit

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal sponsor

linking: ab seg

1 ELEMENTS

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate
docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur
opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface
surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element addSpan
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.transcriptional.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  empty
}
```

Schematron <sch:assert test="@spanTo">The spanTo= attribute of <sch:name/> is required.</sch:assert>

Schematron <sch:assert test="@spanTo">L'attribut spanTo est requis.</sch:assert>

Example

```
<handNote scribe="HelgiÓlafsson" xml:id="HE0L"/>
<body>
  <div/>
  <addSpan hand="#HE0L" n="added gathering" spanTo="#P025"/>
  <div/>
  <div/>
  <div/>
  <div/>
  <anchor xml:id="P025"/>
  <div/>
</body>
```

Note Both the beginning and the end of the added material must be marked; the beginning by the <addSpan> element itself, the end by the spanTo attribute.

<addrLine> (address line) contains one line of a postal address. [3.5.2. 2.2.4.
3.11.2.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition,
@xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global-linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf,
@next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global-analytic (@ana)) (att.global-facs
(@facs)) (att.global-change (@change))

Member of model.addrPart

Contained by

core: address

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element addrLine { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example

```
<address>  
  <addrLine>Computing Center, MC 135</addrLine>  
  <addrLine>P.O. Box 6998</addrLine>  
  <addrLine>Chicago, IL</addrLine>  
  <addrLine>60680 USA</addrLine>  
</address>
```

Note Addresses may be encoded either as a sequence of lines, or using any sequence of component elements from the model.addrPart class. Other non-postal forms of address, such as telephone numbers or email, should not be included within an <address> element directly but may be wrapped within an <addrLine> if they form part of the printed address in some source text.

<address> contains a postal address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual. [3.5.2. 2.2.4. 3.11.2.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.addressLike model.publicationStmntPart

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s span

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal publicationStmnt rendition sponsor tagUsage

iso-fs: fDescr fsDescr

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: addrLine cb gap gb index lb milestone name note pb postBox postCode rs street

dictionaries: lang

figures: figure notatedMusic

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

transcr: addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

Declaration

```
element address
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.global*, ( ( model.addrPart ), model.global* )+ )
}
```

Example

```
<address>
  <street>via Marsala 24</street>
  <postCode>40126</postCode>
  <name>Bologna</name>
  <name n="I">Italy</name>
</address>
```

Example

```
<address>
  <addrLine>Computing Center, MC 135</addrLine>
  <addrLine>P.O. Box 6998</addrLine>
  <addrLine>Chicago, IL 60680</addrLine>
  <addrLine>USA</addrLine>
</address>
```

Note This element should be used for postal addresses only. Within it, the generic element `<addrLine>` may be used as an alternative to any of the more specialized elements available from the `model.addrPart` class, such as `<street>`, `<postCode>` etc.

<alt/> (alternation) identifies an alternation or a set of choices among elements or passages. [16.8.]

Module linking

Attributes Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@rend`, `@style`, `@rendition`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) (`att.global.change` (`@change`)) `att.typed` (`@type`, `@subtype`) `att.pointing` (`target`, `@targetLang`, `@evaluate`)

@target specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI References

Derived from att.pointing

Status Optional

Datatype 2–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Values One or more syntactically valid URI references, separated by whitespace. Because whitespace is used to separate URIs, no whitespace is permitted inside a single URI. If a whitespace character is required in a URI, it should be escaped with the normal mechanism, e.g. `TEI%20Consortium`.

@targets specifies the identifiers of the alternative elements or passages.

Status Optional

Datatype 2–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Values Each value specified must be the same as that specified as value for an `xml:id` attribute for some other element in the current document.

Note This attribute is deprecated. It is retained for backward compatibility only; the attribute `target` should be used for preference. It is an error to supply both attributes, but one or the other must be present.

@mode states whether the alternations gathered in this collection are exclusive or inclusive.

Status Recommended

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Legal values are: **excl** (exclusive) indicates that the alternation is exclusive, i.e. that at most one of the alternatives occurs.

incl (inclusive) indicates that the alternation is not exclusive, i.e. that one or more of the alternatives occur.

@weights If mode is **excl**, each weight states the probability that the corresponding alternative occurs. If mode is **incl** each weight states the probability that the corresponding alternative occurs given that at least one of the other alternatives occurs.

Status Optional

Datatype 2–∞ occurrences of `data.probability` separated by whitespace

Note If mode is **excl**, the sum of weights must be 1. If mode is **incl**, the sum of weights must be in the range from 0 to the number of alternants.

Member of model.global.meta

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom
hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg
xr

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote
language licence principal sponsor

linking: ab altGrp seg

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate
docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur
opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface
surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```

element alt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attribute.targetLang,
  att.pointing.attribute.evaluate,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute target { list { data.pointer, data.pointer, data.pointer* } }?,
  attribute targets { list { data.pointer, data.pointer, data.pointer* } }?,
  attribute mode { "excl" | "incl" }?,
  attribute weights
  {
    list { data.probability, data.probability, data.probability* }
  }?,
  empty
}

```

Schematron <s:report test="@target and @targets">You may not supply both @target
and @targets on <s:name/> </s:report>

Schematron <s:report test="not(@target) and not(@targets)">You must supply either
@target or @targets on <s:name/> </s:report>

Example

```
<alt mode="excl" target="#we.fun #we.sun" weights="0.5 0.5"/>
```

<altGrp> (alternation group) groups a collection of <alt> elements and possibly
pointers. [16.8.]

Module linking

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition,
@xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf,
@next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs
(@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.pointing.group (@domains, @targFunc)
(att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate)) (att.typed (@type, @subtype))

@mode states whether the alternations gathered in this collection are exclusive
or inclusive.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Legal values are: **excl** (exclusive) indicates that the alternation is exclusive, i.e. that at most one of the alternatives occurs.[Default]

incl (inclusive) indicates that the alternation is not exclusive, i.e. that one or more of the alternatives occur.

Member of model.global.meta

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal sponsor

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain

core: ptr

linking: alt

Declaration

```
element altGrp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.group.attributes,
  attribute mode { "excl" | "incl" }?,
  ( alt | ptr )*
}
```

Example

```
<altGrp mode="excl">
  <alt targets="#dm #lt #bb" weights="0.5 0.25 0.25"/>
  <alt targets="#rl #db" weights="0.5 0.5"/>
</altGrp>
```

Example

```
<altGrp mode="incl">
  <alt targets="#dm #rl" weights="0.90 0.90"/>
  <alt targets="#lt #rl" weights="0.5 0.5"/>
```

```

<alt targets="#bb #rl" weights="0.5 0.5"/>
<alt targets="#dm #db" weights="0.10 0.10"/>
<alt targets="#lt #db" weights="0.45 0.90"/>
<alt targets="#bb #db" weights="0.45 0.90"/>
</altGrp>

```

Note Any number of alternations, pointers or extended pointers.

<am> (abbreviation marker) contains a sequence of letters or signs present in an abbreviation which are omitted or replaced in the expanded form of the abbreviation. [11.3.1.2.]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.editorial

Contained by

analysis: cl pc phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyp h iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage

iso-fs: fDescr fsDescr

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

May contain

core: add corr del orig reg sic unclear

gaiji: g

transcr: damage handShift mod redo restore retrace supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```

element am
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,

```

```
( text | model.gLike | model.pPart.transcriptional )*
}
```

Example

```
do you <abbr>Mr<am>.</am>
</abbr> Jones?
```

Example

```
<expan>
  <abbr>Aug<am>g</am>
</abbr>
<ex>ustorum duo</ex>
</expan>
```

<analytic> (analytic level) contains bibliographic elements describing an item (e.g. an article or poem) published within a monograph or journal and not as an independent publication. [3.11.2.1.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of

Contained by

core: biblStruct

May contain

core: author date editor ref respStmt textLang title

header: idno

Declaration

```
element analytic
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( author | editor | respStmt | title | ref | date | textLang | idno ) *
}
```

Example

```
<biblStruct>
  <analytic>
    <author>Chesnutt, David</author>
    <title>Historical Editions in the States</title>
  </analytic>
  <monogr>
    <title level="j">Computers and the Humanities</title>
    <imprint>
      <biblScope>25.6</biblScope>
      <date when="1991-12">(December, 1991):</date>
      <biblScope>377-380</biblScope>
    </imprint>
  </monogr>
</biblStruct>
```

Note May contain titles and statements of responsibility (author, editor, or other), in any order. The <analytic> element may only occur within a <biblStruct>, where its use is mandatory for the description of an analytic level bibliographic item.

<anchor/> (anchor point) attaches an identifier to a point within a text, whether or not it corresponds with a textual element. [8.4.2. 16.4.]

Module linking

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.links (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list listBibl measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal sponsor

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc subst supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element anchor { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attributes, empty }
```

Example

```
<s>The anchor is he<anchor xml:id="A234"/>re somewhere.</s>
<s>Help me find it.<ptr target="#A234"/>
</s>
```

Note On this element, the global xml:id attribute must be supplied to specify an identifier for the point at which this element occurs within a document. The value used may be chosen freely provided that it is unique within the document and is a syntactically valid name. There is no requirement for values containing numbers to be in sequence.

<appInfo> (application information) records information about an application which has edited the TEI file.

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

header: application

Declaration

```
element appInfo { att.global.attributes, model.applicationLike+ }
```

Example

```
<appInfo>
  <application ident="Xaira" version="1.24">
    <label>XAIRA Indexer</label>
    <ptr target="#P1"/>
  </application>
</appInfo>
```

<application> provides information about an application which has acted upon the document.

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.dataable (@calendar, @period) (att.dataable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))

@ident Supplies an identifier for the application, independent of its version number or display name.

Status Required

Datatype `data.name`

@version Supplies a version number for the application, independent of its identifier or display name.

Status Required

Datatype

```
token { pattern = "[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*(\.[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*){0,3}" }
```

Member of model.applicationLike

Contained by

header: appInfo

May contain

core: desc label p ptr ref

linking: ab

Declaration

```
element application
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  attribute ident { data.name },
  attribute version
  {
    token { pattern = "[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*(\.[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*){0,3}" }
  },
  ( model.labelLike+, ( model.ptrLike* | model.pLike* ) )
}
```

Example

```
<appInfo>
  <application ident="ImageMarkupTool1" notAfter="2006-06-
01" version="1.5">
    <Label>Image Markup Tool</Label>
    <ptr target="#P1"/>
    <ptr target="#P2"/>
  </application>
</appInfo>
```

This example shows an appInfo element documenting the fact that version 1.5 of the Image Markup Tool1 application has an interest in two parts of a document which was last saved on June 6 2006. The parts concerned are accessible at the URLs given as target for the two <ptr> elements.

<argument> contains a formal list or prose description of the topics addressed by a subdivision of a text. [4.2. 4.6.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

core: lg list

figures: table

textstructure: back body div front group opener titlePage

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: bibl biblStruct cb cit desc gap gb head index l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage

dictionaries: entry entryFree superEntry

figures: figure notatedMusic table

header: biblFull

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

Declaration

```
element argument
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( ( model.global | model.headLike )*, ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+ )
}
```

Example

```
<argument>
  <p>Monte Video – Maldonado – Excursion
    to R Polanco – Lazo and Bolas – Partridges –
    Absence of Trees – Deer – Capybara, or River Hog –
    Tucutuco – Molothrus, cuckoo-like habits – Tyrant
    Flycatcher – Mocking-bird – Carrion Hawks –
    Tubes formed by Lightning – House struck</p>
</argument>
```

Note Often contains either a list or a paragraph

<author> in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of an author, personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority. [3.11.2.2. 2.2.1.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))

Member of model.respLike

Contained by

core: analytic bibl monogr

header: editionStmt titleStmt

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element author
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<author>British Broadcasting Corporation</author>
<author>La Fayette, Marie Madeleine Pioche de la Vergne, comtesse de
(1634–1693)</author>
<author>Anonymous</author>
<author>Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation</author>
<author>
  <persName>Beaumont, Francis</persName> and
  <persName>John Fletcher</persName>
</author>
<author>
  <orgName key="BBC">British Broadcasting
  Corporation</orgName>: Radio 3 Network
</author>
```

Note Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use a generally recognized name authority file to supply the content for this element. The attributes *key* or *ref* may also be used to reference canonical information about the author(s) intended from any appropriate authority, such as a library catalogue or online resource. In the case of a broadcast, use this element for the name of the company or network responsible for making the broadcast. Where an author is unknown or unspecified, this element may contain text such as *Unknown* or *Anonymous*. When the appropriate TEI modules are in use, it may also contain detailed tagging of the names used for people, organizations or places, in particular where multiple names are given.

<authority> (release authority) supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for making a work available, other than a publisher or distributor. [2.2.4.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.publicationStmtPart

Contained by

core: monogr

header: publicationStmt

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

dictionaries: lang

figures: figure notatedMusic

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

transcr: addSpan am damageSpan delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst
substJoin

Declaration

```
element authority { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq.limited }
```

Example

```
<authority>John Smith</authority>
```

<availability> supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, any licence applying to it, etc. [2.2.4.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.declarable (@default)

@status supplies a code identifying the current availability of the text.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Legal values are: **free** the text is freely available.

unknown the status of the text is unknown. [Default]

restricted the text is not freely available.

Member of model.publicationStmtPart

Contained by

header: publicationStmt

May contain

core: p

header: licence

linking: ab

Declaration

```
element availability
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  attribute status { "free" | "unknown" | "restricted" }?,
  ( model.availabilityPart | model.pLike )+
}
```

Example

```
<availability status="restricted">
  <p>Available for academic research purposes only.</p>
```

```
</availability>
<availability status="free">
  <p>In the public domain</p>
</availability>
<availability status="restricted">
  <p>Available under licence from the publishers.</p>
</availability>
```

Example

```
<availability>
  <licence target="http://opensource.org/licenses/MIT">
    <p>The MIT License
      applies to this document.</p>
    <p>Copyright (C) 2011 by The University of Victoria</p>
    <p>Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining
a copy
      of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"),
to deal
      in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the
rights
      to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or
sell
      copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is
furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:</p>
    <p>The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be
included in
      all copies or substantial portions of the Software.</p>
    <p>THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND,
EXPRESS OR
      IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF
MERCHANTABILITY,
      FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT
SHALL THE
      AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER
LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE,
ARISING FROM,
      OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS
IN
      THE SOFTWARE.</p>
  </licence>
</availability>
```

Note A consistent format should be adopted

<back> (back matter) contains any appendixes, etc. following the main part of a text.

[4.7. 4.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.declaring (@decls)

Member of

Contained by

textstructure: floatingText text

transcr: facsimile

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: cb divGen gap gb head index lb milestone note pb

figures: figure notatedMusic

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

textstructure: argument byline closer div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
docTitle epigraph postscript signed titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

Declaration

```
element back
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  (
    ( model.frontPart | model.pLike.front | model.global )*,
    (
      (
        ( model.div1Like ),
        ( model.frontPart | model.div1Like | model.global )*
      )
      | (
        ( model.divLike ),
        ( model.frontPart | model.divLike | model.global )*
      )
    )?
  ),
  ( ( ( model.divBottomPart ), ( model.divBottomPart | model.global )* )? )
}
```

Example

```
<back>
<div1 type="appendix">
  <head>The Golden Dream or, the Ingenuous Confession</head>
  <p>To shew the Depravity of human Nature </p>
</div1>
<div1 type="epistle">
  <head>A letter from the Printer, which he desires may be inserted</head>
  <salute>Sir.</salute>
  <p>I have done with your Copy, so you may return it to the Vatican, if
you please </p>
</div1>
<div1 type="advert">
  <head>The Books usually read by the Scholars of Mrs Two-Shoes are these
and are sold at Mr
  Newbery's at the Bible and Sun in St Paul's Church-yard.</head>
  <list>
    <item n="1">The Christmas Box, Price 1d.</item>
    <item n="2">The History of Giles Gingerbread, 1d.</item>
    <item n="42">A Curious Collection of Travels, selected from the Writers
of all Nations,
    10 Vol, Pr. bound 1l.</item>
  </list>
</div1>
<div1 type="advert">
```

```
<head>
  <hi rend="center">By the KING's Royal Patent,</hi> Are sold by J.
NEWBERY, at the
  Bible and Sun in St. Paul's Church-Yard.</head>
<list>
  <item n="1">Dr. James's Powders for Fevers, the Small-Pox, Measles,
  Colds, &c.
    2s. 6d</item>
  <item n="2">Dr. Hooper's Female Pills, 1s.</item>
</list>
</div1>
</back>
```

Note The content model of back matter is identical to that of front matter, reflecting the facts of cultural history.

<bibl> (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged. [3.11.1. 2.2.7. 15.3.2.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.declarable (@default) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.docStatus (@status)

Member of model.biblLike model.biblPart model.msItemPart model.personPart

Contained by

core: add bibl cit corr del desc emph head hi item l listBibl meeting note orig p q quote ref reg relatedItem said sic stage title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence rendition sourceDesc tagUsage taxonomy

iso-fs: fDescr fsDescr

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript signed titlePart

transcr: damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address author bibl biblScope cb choice citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp meeting mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr pubPlace publisher ref reg relatedItem respStmnt rs series sic soCalled term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: lang

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: distributor edition extent funder idno principal sponsor

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element bibl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  att.docStatus.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.highlighted      | model.pPart.data      | model.pPart.edit
  )
}
```

Example

```
<bibl>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to Literature in  
English (Yale,  
1990)</bibl>
```

Example

```
<bibl>  
<title level="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the  
Wood</title>. In  
<author>Victor E Neuberg</author>, <title>The Penny Histories</title>.  
<publisher>OUP</publisher>  
<date>1968</date>.  
</bibl>
```

Example

```
<bibl subtype="book_chapter" type="article" xml:id="carlin_2003">  
<author>  
<name>  
<surname>Carlin</surname>  
(<forename>Claire</forename>)</name>  
</author>,  
<title level="a">The Staging of Impotence : France's last  
congrès</title> dans  
<bibl type="monogr">  
<title level="m">Theatrum mundi : studies in honor of Ronald W.  
Tobin</title>, éd.  
<editor>  
<name>  
<forename>Claire</forename>  
<surname>Carlin</surname>  
</name>  
</editor> et  
<editor>  
<name>  
<forename>Kathleen</forename>  
<surname>Wine</surname>  
</name>  
</editor>,  
<pubPlace>Charlottesville, Va.</pubPlace>,  
<publisher>Rookwood Press</publisher>,
```

```
<date when="2003">2003</date>.  
</bibl>  
</bibl>
```

Note Contains phrase-level elements, together with any combination of elements from the *biblPart* class

<biblFull> (fully-structured bibliographic citation) contains a fully-structured bibliographic citation, in which all components of the TEI file description are present. [3.11.1. 2.2. 2.2.7. 15.3.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes *att.global* (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (*att.global.linking* (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (*att.global.analytic* (*@ana*)) (*att.global.facs* (*@facs*)) (*att.global.change* (*@change*)) *att.declarable* (*@default*) *att.sortable* (*@sortKey*) *att.docStatus* (*@status*)

Member of model.biblLike

Contained by

core: add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l listBibl meeting note orig p q quote ref reg relatedItem said sic stage title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence rendition sourceDesc tagUsage taxonomy

iso-fs: fDescr fsDescr

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript signed titlePart

transcr: damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

May contain

header: editionStmt extent notesStmt publicationStmt seriesStmt sourceDesc titleStmt

Declaration

```
element biblFull  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  att.declarable.attributes,  
  att.sortable.attributes,  
  att.docStatus.attributes,  
  (  
    (  
      titleStmt,  
      editionStmt?,  
      extent?,  
      publicationStmt,  
      seriesStmt?,  
      notesStmt?  
    ),  
    sourceDesc*  
  )  
}
```

Example

```
<biblFull>
  <titleStmt>
    <title>The Feminist Companion to Literature in English: women writers
from the middle ages
    to the present</title>
    <author>Blain, Virginia</author>
    <author>Clements, Patricia</author>
    <author>Grundy, Isobel</author>
  </titleStmt>
  <editionStmt>
    <edition>UK edition</edition>
  </editionStmt>
  <extent>1231 pp</extent>
  <publicationStmt>
    <publisher>Yale University Press</publisher>
    <pubPlace>New Haven and London</pubPlace>
    <date>1990</date>
  </publicationStmt>
  <sourceDesc>
    <p>No source: this is an original work</p>
  </sourceDesc>
</biblFull>
```

<biblScope> (scope of bibliographic reference) defines the scope of a bibliographic reference, for example as a list of page numbers, or a named subdivision of a larger work. [3.11.2.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

@unit identifies the unit of information conveyed by the element, e.g. columns, pages, volume.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Suggested values include: **vol** (volume) the element contains a volume number.

issue the element contains an issue number, or volume and issue numbers.

pp (pages) the element contains a page number or page range.

ll (lines) the element contains a line number or line range.

chap (chapter) the element contains a chapter indication (number and/or title)

part the element identifies a part of a book or collection.

@type identifies the type of information conveyed by the element, e.g. columns, pages, volume.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Suggested values include: **vol** (volume) the element contains a volume number.

issue the element contains an issue number, or volume and issue numbers.

pp (pages) the element contains a page number or page range.

ll (lines) the element contains a line number or line range.

chap (chapter) the element contains a chapter indication (number and/or title)

part the element identifies a part of a book or collection.

@from specifies the starting point of the range of units indicated by the unit attribute.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.word`

@to specifies the end-point of the range of units indicated by the unit attribute.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.word`

Member of model.imprintPart

Contained by

core: bibl imprint monogr series

header: seriesStmnt

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```

element biblScope
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute unit
  {
    "vol" | "issue" | "pp" | "ll" | "chap" | "part" | xsd:Name
  }?,
  attribute type
  {
    "vol" | "issue" | "pp" | "ll" | "chap" | "part" | xsd:Name
  }?,
  attribute from { data.word }?,
  attribute to { data.word }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```
<biblScope>pp 12-34</biblScope>
<biblScope from="12" to="34" unit="pp"/>
<biblScope unit="vol">II</biblScope>
<biblScope unit="pp">12</biblScope>
```

<biblStruct> (structured bibliographic citation) contains a structured bibliographic citation, in which only bibliographic sub-elements appear and in a specified order. [3.11.1. 2.2.7. 15.3.2.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.declarable (@default) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.docStatus (@status)

Member of model.biblLike model.msItemPart

Contained by

core: add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l listBibl meeting note orig p q quote ref reg relatedItem said sic stage title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence rendition sourceDesc tagUsage taxonomy

iso-fs: fDescr fsDescr

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript signed titlePart

transcr: damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

May contain

core: analytic citedRange monogr note ptr ref relatedItem series

header: idno

Declaration

```
element biblStruct
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  att.docStatus.attributes,
  (
    analytic*,
    ( monogr, series* )+,
    ( model.noteLike | idno | model.ptrLike | relatedItem | citedRange )*)
}
```

Example

```
<biblStruct>
<monogr>
```

```
<author>Blain, Virginia</author>
<author>Clements, Patricia</author>
<author>Grundy, Isobel</author>
<title>The Feminist Companion to Literature in English: women writers
from the middle ages
    to the present</title>
<edition>first edition</edition>
<imprint>
  <publisher>Yale University Press</publisher>
  <pubPlace>New Haven and London</pubPlace>
  <date>1990</date>
</imprint>
</monogr>
</biblStruct>
```

<bicond> (bi-conditional feature-structure constraint) defines a biconditional feature-structure constraint; both consequent and antecedent are specified as feature structures or groups of feature structures; the constraint is satisfied if both subsume a given feature structure, or if both do not. [18.11.]

Module iso-fs

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of

Contained by

iso-fs: fsConstraints

May contain

iso-fs: f fs iff

Declaration

```
element bicond { att.global.attributes, ( ( fs | f ), iff, ( fs | f ) ) }
```

Example

```
<bicond>
  <fs>
    <f name="F00">
      <symbol value="42"/>
    </f>
  </fs>
  <iff/>
  <fs>
    <f name="BAR">
      <binary value="true"/>
    </f>
  </fs>
</bicond>
```

<binary/> (binary value) represents the value part of a feature-value specification which can contain either of exactly two possible values. [18.2.]

Module iso-fs

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)

@value supplies a binary value.

Status Required

Datatype `data.truthValue`

Values a string representing a binary value (true or false, 0 or 1) .

Member of model.featureVal.single

Contained by

iso-fs: f fvLib if vAlt vColl vDefault vLabel vMerge vNot vRange

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element binary
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.datcat.attributes,
  attribute value { data.truthValue },
  empty
}
```

Example

```
<f name="strident">
  <binary value="true"/>
</f>
<f name="exclusive">
  <binary value="false"/>
</f>
```

Note The value attribute may take any value permitted for attributes of the W3C datatype Boolean: this includes for example the strings **true** or **1** which are equivalent.

<binaryObject> provides encoded binary data representing an inline graphic, audio, video or other object. [3.9.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.media (@width, @height, @scale) (att.internetMedia (@mimeType)) att.timed (@start, @end) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

@encoding The encoding used to encode the binary data. If not specified, this is assumed to be Base64.

Status Optional

Datatype 1-∞ occurrences of `data.word` separated by whitespace

Member of model.graphicLike model.titlepagePart

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email
emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure
mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic
soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: char glyph

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: damage facsimile fw metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface
surplus zone

May contain Character data only

Declaration

```

element binaryObject
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.media.attributes,
  att.timed.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute encoding { list { data.word+ } }?,
  text
}

```

Example

```

<binaryObject mimeType="image/gif">
R0lGODdhMAAwAPAAAAAAP///ywAAAAAMAawAAAC8IyPqcvT3wCcDkiLc7C0qwy
GHhSwpjQu5yqmCYsapyuvUulv0Nm0ZtFzgFzByTB10Qgx0R0TqBQejhRNz0fkVJ
+5YiUqrXF5Y5lKh/DeuNcP5yLWGsEbtLi0Spa/TPg7JpJHxyendzWTBfX0cx0nK
PjgBzi4diinWGdkF8kjdfnycQZXZeYGejmJlZeGl9i2icVqaNvailT6F5iJ90m6
mvuTS40K05M0vDk0Q4XUtwwK0zrcd3iq9uisF81M10IcR7lEewwcLp7tuNNkM3u
Nna3F2JQFo97Vriy/Xl4/f1cf5VWzXyym7PH hX4dbgYKAAA7</binaryObject>

```

<**body**> (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter. [4.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition,
@xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf,
@next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs
(@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.declaring (@decls)

Member of

Contained by

textstructure: floatingText text

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: bibl biblStruct cb cit desc divGen gap gb head index l label lb lg list listBibl
meeting milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage
dictionaries: entry entryFree superEntry
figures: figure notatedMusic table
header: biblFull
iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib
linking: ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline
textstructure: argument byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate epigraph
floatingText opener postscript salute signed trailer
transcr: addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin
Declaration

```
element body
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  (
    model.global*,
    ( ( model.divTop ), ( model.global | model.divTop )* )?,
    ( ( model.divGenLike ), ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )?,
    (
      ( ( model.divLike ), ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+
      | ( ( model.divlLike ), ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+
      | (
          ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+,
          (
            ( ( model.divLike ), ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+
            | ( ( model.divlLike ), ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+
          )?
        )
    ),
    ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
  )
}
```

Example

```
<body>
<l>Nu scylun hergan hefaenricaes uard</l>
<l>metudæs maecti end his modgidanc</l>
<l>uerc uuldurfadur sue he uundra gihuaes</l>
<l>eci dryctin or astelidæ</l>
<l>he aerist scop aelda barnum</l>
<l>heben til hrofe haleg scepen.</l>
<l>tha middungeard moncynnæs uard</l>
<l>eci dryctin æfter tiadæ</l>
<l>firum foldu frea allmectig</l>
<trailer>primo cantauit Cædmon istud carmen.</trailer>
</body>
```

<byline> contains the primary statement of responsibility given for a work on its title page or at the head or end of the work. [4.2.2. 4.5.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf,

1 ELEMENTS

@next, @prev, @exclude, @select) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))

Member of model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

core: lg list

figures: table

textstructure: back body div front group opener titlePage

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: docAuthor

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element byline
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | docAuthor | model.global )*
}
```

Example

```
<byline>Written by a CITIZEN who continued all the  
while in London. Never made publick before.</byline>
```

Example

```
<byline>Written from her own MEMORANDUMS</byline>
```

Example

```
<byline>By George Jones, Political Editor, in Washington</byline>
```

Example

```
<byline>BY  
<docAuthor>THOMAS PHILIPOTT,</docAuthor>  
Master of Arts,  
(Somtimes)  
Of Clare-Hall in Cambridge.</byline>
```

Note The byline on a title page may include either the name or a description for the document's author. Where the name is included, it may optionally be tagged using the <docAuthor> element.

<c> (character) represents a character. [17.1.]

Module analysis

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.segLike (@function) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.segLike

Contained by

analysis: cl m pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyp h iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone

May contain

gaiji: g

Declaration

```
element c
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.xtext}
```

Example

```
<phr>
  <c>M</c>
  <c>0</c>
  <c>A</c>
  <c>I</c>
  <w>doth</w>
  <w>sway</w>
  <w>my</w>
  <w>life</w>
</phr>
```

Note Contains a single character, a <g> element, or a sequence of graphemes to be treated as a single character. The type attribute is used to indicate the function of this segmentation, taking values such as letter, punctuation, or digit etc.

<cRefPattern> (canonical reference pattern) specifies an expression and replacement pattern for transforming a canonical reference into a URI. [2.3.6.3. 2.3.6. 2.3.6.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) att.patternReplacement (*@matchPattern*, *@replacementPattern*)

Member of

Contained by

header: refsDecl

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

Declaration

```
element cRefPattern
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.patternReplacement.attributes,
  model.pLike*
}
```

Example

```
<cRefPattern
  matchPattern="([1-9A-Za-z+)\s+([0-9]+):([0-9]+)"
  replacementPattern="#xpath(//div[@type='book'][@n='$1']/div[@type='chap'][@n='$2']/div[@type='verse'][@n='
```

Note The result of the substitution may be either an absolute or a relative URI reference. In the latter case it is combined with the value of *xml:base* in force at the place where the *cRef* attribute occurs to form an absolute URI in the usual manner as prescribed by XML Base.

<calendar> describes a calendar or dating system used in a dating formula in the text. [2.4.4.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) att.pointing (*@targetLang*, *@target*, *@evaluate*)

Member of

Contained by

header: calendarDesc

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

Declaration

```
element calendar
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  model.pLike+
}
```

Example

```
<calendarDesc>
  <calendar xml:id="Julian">
    <p>Julian Calendar (including proleptic)</p>
  </calendar>
</calendarDesc>
```

Example

```
<calendarDesc>
  <calendar
    target="http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Egyptian_calendar"
    xml:id="Egyptian">
    <p>Egyptian calendar (as defined by Wikipedia)</p>
  </calendar>
</calendarDesc>
```

<calendarDesc> (calendar description) contains a description of the calendar system used in any dating expression found in the text. [2.4. 2.4.4.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.profileDescPart

Contained by

header: profileDesc

May contain

header: calendar

Declaration

```
element calendarDesc { att.global.attributes, calendar+ }
```

Example

```
<calendarDesc>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_AD">
    <p>Anno Domini (Christian Era)</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_AH">
    <p>Anno Hegirae (Muhammedan Era)</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_AME">
    <p>Mauludi Era (solar years since Mohammed's birth)</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_AM">
```

```
<p>Anno Mundi (Jewish Calendar)</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_AP">
  <p>Anno Persici</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_AS">
  <p>Aji Saka Era (Java)</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_BE">
  <p>Buddhist Era</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_CB">
  <p>Cooch Behar Era</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_CE">
  <p>Common Era</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_CL">
  <p>Chinese Lunar Era</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_CS">
  <p>Chula Sakarat Era</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_EE">
  <p>Ethiopian Era</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_FE">
  <p>Fasli Era</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_ISO">
  <p>ISO 8601 calendar</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_JE">
  <p>Japanese Calendar</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_KE">
  <p>Khalsa Era (Sikh calendar)</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_KY">
  <p>Kali Yuga</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_ME">
  <p>Malabar Era</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_MS">
  <p>Monarchic Solar Era</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_NS">
  <p>Nepal Samwat Era</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_OS">
  <p>Old Style (Julian Calendar)</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_RS">
  <p>Rattanakosin (Bangkok) Era</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_SE">
  <p>Saka Era</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_SH">
  <p>Mohammedan Solar Era (Iran)</p>
```

```
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_SS">
  <p>Saka Samvat</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_TE">
  <p>Tripurabda Era</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_VE">
  <p>Vikrama Era</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_VS">
  <p>Vikrama Samvat Era</p>
</calendar>
</calendarDesc>
```

Example

```
<calendarDesc>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_Gregorian">
    <p>Gregorian calendar</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_Julian">
    <p>Julian calendar</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_Islamic">
    <p>Islamic or Muslim (hijri) lunar calendar</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_Hebrew">
    <p>Hebrew or Jewish lunisolar calendar</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_Revolutionary">
    <p>French Revolutionary calendar</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_Iranian">
    <p>Iranian or Persian (Jalaali) solar calendar</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_Coptic">
    <p>Coptic or Alexandrian calendar</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_Chinese">
    <p>Chinese lunisolar calendar</p>
  </calendar>
</calendarDesc>
```

Example

```
<calendarDesc>
  <calendar
    target="http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Egyptian_calendar"
    xml:id="cal_Egyptian">
    <p>Egyptian calendar (as defined by Wikipedia)</p>
  </calendar>
</calendarDesc>
```

Note In the first example above, calendars and short codes for xml:ids are from W3 guidelines at

<case> contains grammatical case information given by a dictionary for a given form.
[9.3.1.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))

Member of model.morphLike

Contained by

dictionaries: dictScrap entryFree etym form gramGrp

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```

element case
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example Taken from *Wörterbuch der Deutschen Sprache. Veranstalet und herausgegeben von Joachim Heinrich Campe. Erster Theil. A - bis - E. (Braunschweig 1807. In der Schulbuchhandlung):*

Das Evangelium, des Evangelii, ...

```

<entry>
  <form type="lemma">
    <gramGrp>
      <pos value="noun"/>
      <gen value="n"/>
    </gramGrp>
    <form type="determiner">
      <orth>Das</orth>
    </form>
    <form type="headword">
      <orth>Evangelium</orth>,</form>
    </form>
    <form type="inflected">
      <gramGrp>

```



```

    <case value="genitive"/>
    <number value="singular"/>
  </gramGrp>
  <form type="determiner">
    <orth>des</orth>
  </form>
  <form type="headword">
    <orth>
      <oVar>Evangelii</oVar>,</orth>
    </form>
  </form>
</entry>

```

Note May contain character data and phrase-level elements. Typical values will be of the form *nominative*, *accusative*, *dative*, *genitive*, etc. This element is synonymous with <gram type="case">.

<catDesc> (category description) describes some category within a taxonomy or text typology, either in the form of a brief prose description or in terms of the situational parameters used by the TEI formal textDesc. [2.3.7.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of

Contained by

header: category

May contain

core: abbr address choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gloss hi measure measureGrp mentioned name num ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

corpus: textDesc

dictionaries: lang

header: idno

transcr: am ex subst

Declaration

```

element catDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( text | model.limitedPhrase | model.catDescPart )*
}

```

Example

```
<catDesc>Prose reportage</catDesc>
```

Example

```

<catDesc>
  <textDesc n="novel">
    <channel mode="w">print; part issues</channel>
  </textDesc>
</catDesc>

```

```

<constitution type="single"/>
<derivation type="original"/>
<domain type="art"/>
<factuality type="fiction"/>
<interaction type="none"/>
<preparedness type="prepared"/>
<purpose degree="high" type="entertain"/>
<purpose degree="medium" type="inform"/>
</textDesc>
</catDesc>

```

<catRef/> (category reference) specifies one or more defined categories within some taxonomy or text typology. [2.4.3.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) att.pointing (*@targetLang*, *@target*, *@evaluate*)

@scheme identifies the classification scheme within which the set of categories concerned is defined

Status Optional

Datatype data.pointer

Values May supply the identifier of the associated <taxonomy> element.

Members contained by

core: imprint

header: textClass

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```

element catRef
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  attribute scheme { data.pointer }?,
  empty
}

```

Example

```

<catRef target="#news #prov #sales2"/>
<taxonomy>
  <category xml:id="news">
    <catDesc>Newspapers</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="prov">
    <catDesc>Provincial</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="sales2">
    <catDesc>Low to average annual sales</catDesc>
  </category>
</taxonomy>

```

```
</category>  
</taxonomy>
```

Note The scheme attribute need be supplied only if more than one taxonomy has been declared

<category> contains an individual descriptive category, possibly nested within a superordinate category, within a user-defined taxonomy. [2.3.7.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of

Contained by

header: category taxonomy

May contain

core: desc gloss

header: catDesc category

Declaration

```
element category  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  ( ( catDesc+ | ( model.descLike | model.glossLike )* ), category* )  
}
```

Example

```
<category xml:id="b1">  
  <catDesc>Prose reportage</catDesc>  
</category>
```

Example

```
<category xml:id="b2">  
  <catDesc>Prose </catDesc>  
  <category xml:id="b11">  
    <catDesc>journalism</catDesc>  
  </category>  
  <category xml:id="b12">  
    <catDesc>fiction</catDesc>  
  </category>  
</category>
```

Example

```
<category xml:id="LIT">  
  <catDesc xml:lang="pl">literatura piękna</catDesc>  
  <catDesc xml:lang="en">fiction</catDesc>  
  <category xml:id="LPROSE">  
    <catDesc xml:lang="pl">proza</catDesc>  
    <catDesc xml:lang="en">prose</catDesc>  
  </category>
```

```

<category xml:id="LPOETRY">
  <catDesc xml:lang="pl">poezja</catDesc>
  <catDesc xml:lang="en">poetry</catDesc>
</category>
<category xml:id="LDRAMA">
  <catDesc xml:lang="pl">dramat</catDesc>
  <catDesc xml:lang="en">drama</catDesc>
</category>
</category>

```

<cb/> (column break) marks the boundary between one column of a text and the next in a standard reference system. [3.10.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.edition (@ed, @edRef) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.breaking (@break)

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list listBibl measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal sponsor

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc subst supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```

element cb
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.edition.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  att.breaking.attributes,

```

```

    empty
}

```

Example Markup of an early English dictionary printed in two columns:

```

<pb/>
<cb n="1"/>
<entryFree>
  <form>Well</form>, <sense>a Pit to hold Spring-Water</sense>:
  <sense>In the Art of <hi rend="italic">War</hi>, a Depth the Miner
    sinks into the Ground, to find out and disappoint the Enemies Mines,
    or to prepare one</sense>.
</entryFree>
<entryFree>To <form>Welter</form>, <sense>to wallow</sense>, or
<sense>lie groveling</sense>.</entryFree>
<cb n="2"/>
<entryFree>
  <form>Wey</form>, <sense>the greatest Measure for dry Things,
    containing five Chaldron</sense>.
</entryFree>
<entryFree>
  <form>Whale</form>, <sense>the greatest of
    Sea-Fishes</sense>.
</entryFree>

```

Note On this element, the global `n` attribute indicates the number or other value associated with the column which follows the point of insertion of this `<cb>` element. Encoders should adopt a clear and consistent policy as to whether the numbers associated with column breaks relate to the physical sequence number of the column in the whole text, or whether columns are numbered within the page. By convention, the `<cb>` element is placed at the head of the column to which it refers.

<cell> contains one cell of a table. [14.1.1.]

Module figures

Attributes Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@rend`, `@style`, `@rendition`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) (`att.global.change` (`@change`)) `att.tableDecoration` (`@role`, `@rows`, `@cols`)

Member of

Contained by

figures: row

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```

element cell
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.tableDecoration.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```

<row>
  <cell role="label">General conduct</cell>
  <cell role="data">Not satisfactory, on account of his great unpunctuality
    and inattention to duties</cell>
</row>

```

<change> documents a change or set of changes made during the production of a source document, or during the revision of an electronic file. [2.5. 2.4.1.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.ascribed (@who) att.datable (@calendar, @period)
(att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) att.docStatus
(@status) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base,
@xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next,
@prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))
(att.global.change (@change)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

@target points to one or more elements that belong to this change.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of **data.pointer** separated by
whitespace

Member of

header: listChange revisionDesc

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb
ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element change
{
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  att.dateable.attributes,
  att.docStatus.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute target { list { data.pointer+ } }?,
  macro.specialPara}
```

Example

```
<titleStmt>
  <title> ... </title>
  <editor xml:id="LDB">Lou Burnard</editor>
  <respStmt xml:id="BZ">
    <resp>copy editing</resp>
    <name>Brett Zamir</name>
  </respStmt>
</titleStmt>
<revisionDesc status="published">
  <change status="public" when="2008-02-02" who="#BZ">Finished chapter
23</change>
  <change status="draft" when="2008-01-02" who="#BZ">Finished chapter
2</change>
  <change n="P2.2" when="1991-12-21" who="#LDB">Added examples to section
3</change>
  <change when="1991-11-11" who="#MSM">Deleted chapter 10</change>
</revisionDesc>
```

Example

```
<profileDesc>
  <creation>
    <listChange>
      <change xml:id="DRAFT1">First draft in pencil</change>
      <change notBefore="1880-12-09" xml:id="DRAFT2">First revision, mostly
using green ink</change>
      <change notBefore="1881-02-13" xml:id="DRAFT3">Final corrections as
supplied to printer.</change>
    </listChange>
  </creation>
</profileDesc>
```

Note The who attribute may be used to point to any other element, but will typically specify a <respStmt> or <person> element elsewhere in the header, identifying the person responsible for the change and their role in making it. It is recommended that changes be recorded with the most recent first. The status attribute may be used to indicate the status of a document following the change documented.

<channel> (primary channel) describes the medium or channel by which a text is delivered or experienced. For a written text, this might be print, manuscript, e-mail, etc.; for a spoken one, radio, telephone, face-to-face, etc. [15.2.1.]

Module corpus

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Mode specifies the mode of this channel with respect to speech and writing.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Legal values are: s (spoken)

 w (written)

 sw (spoken to be written) e.g. dictation

 ws (written to be spoken) e.g. a script

 m (mixed)

 x (unknown or inapplicable) [Default]

Member of model.textDescPart

Contained by

corpus: textDesc

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

dictionaries: lang

figures: figure notatedMusic

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

transcr: addSpan am damageSpan delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst substJoin

Declaration

```
element channel
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute mode { "s" | "w" | "sw" | "ws" | "m" | "x" }?,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}

```

Example

```
<channel mode="s">face-to-face conversation</channel>
```

<char> (character) provides descriptive information about a character.

Module gaiji

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of

Contained by

gaiji: charDecl

May contain

core: binaryObject desc graphic media note

figures: figure formula

gaiji: charName charProp mapping

Declaration

```
element char
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    charName?,
    model.descLike*,
    charProp*,
    mapping*,
    figure*,
    model.graphicLike*,
    model.noteLike*
  )
}
```

Example

```
<char xml:id="circledU4EBA">
  <charName>CIRCLED IDEOGRAPH 4EBA</charName>
  <charProp>
    <unicodeName>character-decomposition-mapping</unicodeName>
    <value>circle</value>
  </charProp>
  <charProp>
    <localName>daikanwa</localName>
    <value>36</value>
  </charProp>
  <mapping type="standard">□</mapping>
</char>
```

<charDecl> (character declarations) provides information about nonstandard characters and glyphs.

Module gaiji

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

core: desc

gaiji: char glyph

Declaration

```
element charDecl { att.global.attributes, ( desc?, ( char | glyph )+ ) }
```

Example

```
<charDecl>
  <char xml:id="aENL">
    <charName>LATIN LETTER ENLARGED SMALL A</charName>
    <mapping type="standard">a</mapping>
  </char>
</charDecl>
```

<charName> (character name) contains the name of a character, expressed following Unicode conventions.

Module gaiji

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))

Member of

Contained by

gaiji: char

May contain Character data only

Declaration `element charName { att.global.attributes, text }`

Example

```
<charName>CIRCLED IDEOGRAPH 4EBA</charName>
```

Note The name must follow Unicode conventions for character naming. Projects working in similar fields are recommended to coordinate and publish their list of <charName>s to facilitate data exchange.

<charProp> (character property) provides a name and value for some property of the parent character or glyph.

Module gaiji

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Member of

Contained by

gaiji: char glyph

May contain

gaiji: localName unicodeName value

Declaration

```
element charProp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( ( unicodeName | localName ), value )
}
```

Example

```
<charProp>
  <unicodeName>character-decomposition-mapping</unicodeName>
  <value>circle</value>
</charProp>
<charProp>
  <localName>daikanwa</localName>
  <value>36</value>
</charProp>
```

Note If the property is a Unicode Normative Property, then its <unicodeName> must be supplied. Otherwise, its name must be specified by means of a <localName>. At a later release, additional constraints will be defined on possible value/name combinations using Schematron rules

<choice> groups a number of alternative encodings for the same point in a text. [3.4.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.linePart model.pPart.editorial

Contained by

analysis: cl pc phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage

iso-fs: fDescr fsDescr

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone

May contain

core: abbr choice corr expan orig reg sic unclear

linking: seg

transcr: am ex

Declaration

element choice { att.global.attributes, (model.choicePart choice)* }
--

Example An American encoding of *Gulliver's Travels* which retains the British spelling but also provides a version regularized to American spelling might be encoded as follows.

```
<p>Lastly, That, upon his solemn oath to observe all the above
articles, the said man-mountain shall have a daily allowance of
meat and drink sufficient for the support of <choice>
  <sic>1724</sic>
  <corr>1728</corr>
</choice> of our subjects,
with free access to our royal person, and other marks of our
<choice>
  <orig>favour</orig>
  <reg>favor</reg>
</choice>.</p>
```

Note Because the children of a <choice> element all represent alternative ways of encoding the same sequence, it is natural to think of them as mutually exclusive. However, there may be cases where a full representation of a text requires the alternative encodings to be considered as parallel. Note also that <choice> elements may self-nest. Where the purpose of an encoding is to record multiple witnesses of a single work, rather than to identify multiple possible encoding decisions at a given point, the <app> element and associated elements discussed in section 12.1. should be preferred.

<cit> (cited quotation) contains a quotation from some other document, together with a bibliographic reference to its source. In a dictionary it may contain an example text with at least one occurrence of the word form, used in the sense being described, or a translation of the headword, or an example. [3.3.3. 4.3.1. 9.3.5.1.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.entryPart.top model.quoteLike

Contained by

core: add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence rendition tagUsage

iso-fs: fDescr fsDescr

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript signed titlePart

transcr: damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: bibl biblStruct cb cit gap gb index lb milestone note pb ptr q quote ref said

dictionaries: colloc def etym form gramGrp hom hyph lbl orth pos pron re sense subc
superEntry syll usg xr

figures: figure notatedMusic

header: biblFull

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

Declaration

```
element cit
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    model.qLike      | model.egLike      | model.biblLike      | model.ptrLike      | model.glc
  )
}
```

Example

```
<cit>
  <quote>and the breath of the whale is frequently attended with such an
insupportable smell,
  as to bring on disorder of the brain.</quote>
  <bibl>Ulloa's South America</bibl>
</cit>
```

Example

```
<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>horrifier</orth>
  </form>
  <cit type="translation" xml:lang="en">
    <quote>to horrify</quote>
  </cit>
  <cit type="example">
    <quote>elle était horrifiée par la dépense</quote>
    <cit type="translation" xml:lang="en">
      <quote>she was horrified at the expense.</quote>
    </cit>
  </cit>
</entry>
```

<citedRange> (cited range) defines the range of cited content, often represented by pages or other units [3.11.2.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate)

@unit identifies the type of information conveyed by the element, e.g. columns, pages, volume.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Suggested values include: **vol** (volume) the element contains a volume number.

issue the element contains an issue number, or volume and issue numbers.

pp (pages) the element contains a page number or page range.

ll (lines) the element contains a line number or line range.

chap (chapter) the element contains a chapter indication (number and/or title)

part the element identifies a part of a book or collection.

@from specifies the starting point of the range of units indicated by the unit attribute.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.word`

@to specifies the end-point of the range of units indicated by the unit attribute.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.word`

Member of model.biblPart

Contained by

core: bibl biblStruct

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element citedRange
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  attribute unit
  {
    "vol" | "issue" | "pp" | "ll" | "chap" | "part" | xsd:Name
  }?,
  attribute from { data.word }?,
  attribute to { data.word }?,
  macro.phraseSeq
}
```

Example

```
<citedRange>pp 12-13</citedRange>
<citedRange from="12" to="13" unit="pp"/>
<citedRange unit="vol">II</citedRange>
<citedRange unit="pp">12</citedRange>
```

Example

```
<bibl>
  <ptr target="#mueller01"/>, <citedRange
    target="http://example.com/mueller3.xml#page4">vol. 3, pp.
    4-5</citedRange>
</bibl>
```

<cl> (clause) represents a grammatical clause. [17.1.]

Module analysis

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.segLike (@function) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.segLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element cl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<cl function="clause_modifier" type="relative">Which frightened
both the heroes so,<cl>They quite forgot their quarrel.</cl>
</cl>
```

Note The type attribute may be used to indicate the type of clause, taking values such as finite, nonfinite, declarative, interrogative, relative etc. as appropriate.

<classCode> (classification code) contains the classification code used for this text in some standard classification system. [2.4.3.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

@scheme identifies the classification system or taxonomy in use.

Status Required

Datatype **data.pointer**

Values may point to a local definition, for example in a <taxonomy> element, or more usually to some external location where the scheme is fully defined.

Members contained by

core: imprint

header: textClass

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

dictionaries: lang

figures: figure notatedMusic

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

transcr: addSpan am damageSpan delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst substJoin

Declaration


```
element classCode
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute scheme { data.pointer },
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}

```

Example

```
<classCode scheme="http://www.udc.org">410</classCode>
```

<classDecl> (classification declarations) contains one or more taxonomies defining any classificatory codes used elsewhere in the text. [2.3.7. 2.3.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

header: taxonomy

Declaration

```
element classDecl { att.global.attributes, taxonomy+ }
```

Example

```
<classDecl>
  <taxonomy xml:id="LCSH">
    <bibl>Library of Congress Subject Headings</bibl>
  </taxonomy>
</classDecl>
<textClass>
  <keywords scheme="#LCSH">
    <term>Political science</term>
    <term>United States -- Politics and government --
      Revolution, 1775-1783</term>
  </keywords>
</textClass>
```

<closer> groups together salutations, datelines, and similar phrases appearing as a final group at the end of a division, especially of a letter. [4.2.2. 4.2.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.divBottomPart

1 ELEMENTS

Contained by

core: lg list

figures: figure table

textstructure: back body div front group postscript

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: dateline salute signed

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element closer
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | signed      | dateline      | salute      | model.phrase      | model.glob
```

Example

```
<div type="letter">
  <p> perhaps you will favour me with a sight of it when convenient.</p>
  <closer>
    <salute>I remain, &c. &c.</salute>
    <signed>H. Colburn</signed>
  </closer>
</div>
```

Example

```
<div type="chapter">
  <p> and his heart was going like mad and yes I said yes I will Yes.</p>
  <closer>
    <dateline>
      <name type="place">Trieste-Zürich-Paris,</name>
      <date>1914-1921</date>
    </dateline>
  </closer>
</div>
```

<colloc> (collocate) contains a collocate of the headword. [9.3.2.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.entryPart model.gramPart

Contained by

core: cit

dictionaries: dictScrap entryFree form gramGrp

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element colloc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```
<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>médire</orth>
  </form>
  <gramGrp>
    <colloc type="prep">de</colloc>
  </gramGrp>
</entry>

```

<cond> (conditional feature-structure constraint) defines a conditional feature-structure constraint; the consequent and the antecedent are specified as feature structures or feature-structure collections; the constraint is satisfied if both the antecedent and the consequent subsume a given feature structure, or if the antecedent does not. [18.11.]

Module iso-fs

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of

Contained by

iso-fs: fsConstraints

May contain

iso-fs: f fs then

Declaration

```
element cond { att.global.attributes, ( ( fs | f ), then, ( fs | f ) ) }
```

Example

```
<cond>
  <fs>
    <f name="BAR">
      <symbol value="1"/>
    </f>
  </fs>
  <then/>
  <fs>
    <f name="SUBCAT">
      <binary value="false"/>
    </f>
  </fs>
</cond>
```

Note May contain an antecedent feature structure, an empty <then> element, and a consequent feature structure.

<constitution> describes the internal composition of a text or text sample, for example as fragmentary, complete, etc. [15.2.1.]

Module corpus

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

@type specifies how the text was constituted.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Legal values are: **single** a single complete text [Default]

composite a text made by combining several smaller items, each individually complete

frags (fragments) a text made by combining several smaller, not necessarily complete, items

unknown composition unknown or unspecified

Member of model.textDescPart

Contained by

corpus: textDesc

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

dictionaries: lang

figures: figure notatedMusic

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

transcr: addSpan am damageSpan delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst substJoin

Declaration

```
element constitution
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { "single" | "composite" | "frags" | "unknown" }?,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}

```

Example

```
<constitution type="frags">Prologues only.</constitution>
```

Note The function of this element seems to overlap with both the org attribute on <div> and the <samplingDecl> in the <encodingDesc>.

<corr> (correction) contains the correct form of a passage apparently erroneous in the copy text. [3.4.1.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: cl pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: am damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc
 distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list
 listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr
 q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```

element corr
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}
  
```

Example If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been corrected, <corr> may be used alone:

```

I don't know,
Juan. It's so far in the past now – how <corr>can we</corr> prove
or disprove anyone's theories?
  
```

Example It is also possible, using the <choice> and <sic> elements, to provide an uncorrected reading:

```

I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now –
how <choice>
  <sic>we can</sic>
  <corr>can we</corr>
</choice> prove or
disprove anyone's theories?
  
```

<correction> (correction principles) states how and under what circumstances corrections have been made in the text. [2.3.3. 15.3.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.declarable (@default)
 @status indicates the degree of correction applied to the text.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Legal values are: **high** the text has been thoroughly checked and proofread.

medium the text has been checked at least once.

low the text has not been checked.

unknown the correction status of the text is unknown. [Default]

@method indicates the method adopted to indicate corrections within the text.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Legal values are: **silent** corrections have been made silently [Default]

markup corrections have been represented using markup

Member of model.editorialDeclPart

Contained by

header: editorialDecl

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

Declaration

```
element correction
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  attribute status { "high" | "medium" | "low" | "unknown" }?,
  attribute method { "silent" | "markup" }?,
  model.pLike+
}
```

Example

```
<correction>
<p>Errors in transcription controlled by using the WordPerfect spelling
checker, with a user
  defined dictionary of 500 extra words taken from Chambers Twentieth
Century
  Dictionary.</p>
</correction>
```

Note May be used to note the results of proof reading the text against its original, indicating (for example) whether discrepancies have been silently rectified, or recorded using the editorial tags described in section 3.4..

<creation> contains information about the creation of a text. [2.4.1. 2.4.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.dateable (@calendar, @period) (att.dateable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))

Member of model.profileDescPart

1 ELEMENTS

Contained by

header: profileDesc

May contain

core: abbr address choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gloss hi measure
measureGrp mentioned name num ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

dictionaries: lang

header: idno listChange

transcr: am ex subst

Declaration

```
element creation
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.databl.attributes,
  ( text | model.limitedPhrase | listChange ) *
}
```

Example

```
<creation>
  <date>Before 1987</date>
</creation>
```

Example

```
<creation>
  <date when="1988-07-10">10 July 1988</date>
</creation>
```

Note The <creation> element may be used to record details of a text's creation, e.g. the date and place it was composed, if these are of interest. It may also contain a more structured account of the various stages or revisions associated with the evolution of a text; this should be encoded using the <listChange> element. It should not be confused with the <publicationStmnt> element, which records date and place of publication.

<damage> contains an area of damage to the text witness. [11.3.3.1.]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.damaged (@hand, @agent, @degree, @group) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)))

Member of model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: cl pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor
email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure
mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic
soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: am damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr
q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element damage
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.damaged.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```
<l>The Moving Finger wri<damage agent="water" group="1">es; and</damage>
having writ,</l>
<l>Moves <damage agent="water" group="1">
  <supplied>on: nor all your</supplied>
</damage> Piety nor Wit</l>

```

Note Since damage to text witnesses frequently makes them harder to read, the <damage> element will often contain an <unclear> element. If the damaged area is not continuous (e.g. a stain affecting several strings of text), the group attribute may be used to group together several related <damage> elements; alternatively the <join> element may be used to indicate which <damage> and <unclear> elements are part of the same physical phenomenon. The <damage>, <gap>, , <unclear> and <supplied> elements may be closely allied in use. See section 11.3.3.2. for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.

<damageSpan/> (damaged span of text) marks the beginning of a longer sequence of text which is damaged in some way but still legible. [11.3.3.1.]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.damaged (@hand, @agent, @degree, @group) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.spanning (@spanTo)

Member of model.global.edit

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal sponsor

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element damageSpan
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.damaged.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  empty
}
```

Schematron <s:assert test="@spanTo">The @spanTo attribute of <s:name/> is required.</s:assert>

Schematron <s:assert test="@spanTo">L'attribut spanTo est requis.</s:assert>

Example

```
<p>Paragraph partially damaged. This is the undamaged
portion <damageSpan spanTo="#a34"/>and this the damaged
```

```
portion of the paragraph.</p>
<p>This paragraph is entirely damaged.</p>
<p>Paragraph partially damaged; in the middle of this
paragraph the damage ends and the anchor point marks
the start of the <anchor xml:id="a34"/> undamaged part of the text. ...</p>
```

Note Both the beginning and ending of the damaged sequence must be marked: the beginning by the <damageSpan> element, the ending by the target of the spanTo attribute: if no other element available, the <anchor> element may be used for this purpose. The damaged text must be at least partially legible, in order for the encoder to be able to transcribe it. If it is not legible at all, the <damageSpan> element should not be used. Rather, the <gap> or <unclear> element should be employed, with the value of the reason attribute giving the cause. See further sections 11.3.3.1. and 11.3.3.2..

<date> contains a date in any format. [3.5.4. 2.2.4. 2.5. 3.11.2.3. 15.2.3. 13.3.6.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.dataable (@calendar, @period) (att.dataable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.dateLike model.publicationStmtPart

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s span

core: abbr add addrLine analytic author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose setting

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal publicationStmt rendition sponsor tagUsage

iso-fs: fDescr fsDescr

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

1 ELEMENTS

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure reg measureGrp media mentioned
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element date
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dateable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global ) *
}
```

Example

```
<date when="1980-02">early February 1980</date>
```

Example

```
Given on the <date when="1977-06-12">Twelfth Day
of June in the Year of Our Lord One Thousand Nine Hundred and Seventy-seven
of the Republic
the Two Hundredth and first and of the University the Eighty-Sixth.</date>
```

Example

```
<date when="1990-09">September 1990</date>
```

<dateline> contains a brief description of the place, date, time, etc. of production of a letter, newspaper story, or other work, prefixed or suffixed to it as a kind of heading or trailer. [4.2.2.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.divWrapper

Contained by

core: lg list

figures: table

textstructure: body closer div group opener

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w
core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear
dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar
figures: figure formula notatedMusic
gaiji: g
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib
linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline
transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo
Declaration

```
element dateline { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example

```
<dateline>Walden, this 29. of August 1592</dateline>
```

Example

```
<div type="chapter">  
  <p> and his heart was going like mad and yes I said yes I will Yes.</p>  
  <closer>  
    <dateline>  
      <name type="place">Trieste-Zürich-Paris,</name>  
      <date>1914-1921</date>  
    </dateline>  
  </closer>  
</div>
```

<def> (definition) contains definition text in a dictionary entry. [9.3.3.1.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))

Member of model.entryPart model.entryPart.top

Contained by

core: cit

dictionaries: dictScrap entry entryFree etym hom re sense

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr
q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

1 ELEMENTS

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element def
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}
```

Example

```
<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>competitor</orth>
    <hyph>com|peti|tor</hyph>
    <pron>k@m"petit@(r)</pron>
  </form>
  <gramGrp>
    <pos>n</pos>
  </gramGrp>
  <def>person who competes.</def>
</entry>
```

<default/> (default feature value) represents the value part of a feature-value specification which contains a defaulted value. [18.9.]

Module iso-fs

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.featureVal.single

Contained by

iso-fs: f fvLib if vAlt vColl vDefault vLabel vMerge vNot vRange

May contain Empty element

Declaration `element default { att.global.attributes, empty }`

Example

```
<f name="gender">
  <default/>
</f>
```

 (deletion) contains a letter, word, or passage deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise indicated as superfluous or spurious in the copy text by an author, scribe, annotator, or corrector. [3.4.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.transcriptional (@hand, @status, @cause, @seq) (att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp))) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: cl pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyp h iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: am damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace subst supplied surplus zone

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```

element del
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.transcriptional.attributes,

```

att.typed.attributes, macro.paraContent}

Example

```
<l>
  <del rend="overtyped">Mein</del> Frisch
  <del rend="overstrike" type="primary">schwebt</del>
  weht der Wind
</l>
```

Example

```
<del rend="overstrike">
  <gap quantity="5" reason="illegible" unit="character"/>
</del>
```

Note Degrees of uncertainty over what can still be read, or whether a deletion was intended may be indicated by use of the `<certainty>` element (see 21.). This element should be used for deletion of shorter sequences of text, typically single words or phrases. The `<delSpan>` element should be used for longer sequences of text, for those containing structural subdivisions, and for those containing overlapping additions and deletions. The text deleted must be at least partially legible in order for the encoder to be able to transcribe it (unless it is restored in a `<supplied>` tag). Illegible or lost text within a deletion may be marked using the `<gap>` tag to signal that text is present but has not been transcribed, or is no longer visible. Attributes on the `<gap>` element may be used to indicate how much text is omitted, the reason for omitting it, etc. If text is not fully legible, the `<unclear>` element (available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources) should be used to signal the areas of text which cannot be read with confidence in a similar way. There is a clear distinction in the TEI between ``, which is a statement of the the or a later scribe's intent to cancel or remove text, and elements such as `<gap>` or `<unclear>` which signal the editor's decision to omit or inability to read the text remaining. See further sections 11.3.1.7. and, for the close association of the `` tag with the `<gap>`, `<damage>`, `<unclear>` and `<supplied>` elements (the latter three tags available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources), 11.3.3.2. The `` tag should not be used for deletions made by editors or encoders. In these cases, either `<corr>`, `<surplus>` or `<gap>` should be used.

`<delSpan/>` (deleted span of text) marks the beginning of a longer sequence of text deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise signaled as superfluous or spurious by an author, scribe, annotator, or corrector. [11.3.1.4.]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) att.transcriptional (*@hand*, *@status*, *@cause*, *@seq*) (att.editLike (*@evidence*, *@source*, *@instant*)) (att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@precision*, *@scope*)) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*))) (att.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.spanning (*@spanTo*)

Member of model.global.edit

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal sponsor

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element delSpan
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.transcriptional.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  empty
}
```

Schematron <s:assert test="@spanTo">The spanTo= attribute of <s:name/> is required.</s:assert>

Schematron <s:assert test="@spanTo">L'attribut spanTo est requis.</s:assert>

Example

```
<p>Paragraph partially deleted. This is the undeleted
portion <delSpan spanTo="#a23"/>and this the deleted
portion of the paragraph.</p>
<p>Paragraph deleted together with adjacent material.</p>
<p>Second fully deleted paragraph.</p>
<p>Paragraph partially deleted; in the middle of this
paragraph the deletion ends and the anchor point marks
the resumption <anchor xml:id="a23"/> of the text. ...</p>
```

Note Both the beginning and ending of the deleted sequence must be marked: the beginning by the <delSpan> element, the ending by the target of the spanTo attribute. The text deleted must be at least partially legible, in order for the encoder to be able to transcribe it. If it is not legible at all, the <delSpan> tag should not be used. Rather, the <gap> tag should be employed to signal that text cannot be transcribed, with the value of the reason attribute giving the cause for the omission

from the transcription as deletion. If it is not fully legible, the <unclear> element should be used to signal the areas of text which cannot be read with confidence. See further sections 11.3.1.7. and, for the close association of the <delSpan> tag with the <gap>, <damage>, <unclear> and <supplied> elements, 11.3.3.2..The <delSpan> tag should not be used for deletions made by editors or encoders. In these cases, either the <corr> tag or the <gap> tag should be used.

<derivation> describes the nature and extent of originality of this text. [15.2.1.]

Module corpus

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))

@type categorizes the derivation of the text.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Sample values include: **original** text is original

revision text is a revision of some other text

translation text is a translation of some other text

abridgment text is an abridged version of some other text

plagiarism text is plagiarized from some other text

traditional text has no obvious source but is one of a number derived from some common ancestor

Member of model.textDescPart

Contained by

corpus: textDesc

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

dictionaries: lang

figures: figure notatedMusic

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

transcr: addSpan am damageSpan delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst substJoin

Declaration

```
element derivation
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}

```

Example

<derivation type="original"/>

Note For derivative texts, details of the ancestor may be included in the source description.

<desc> (description) contains a brief description of the object documented by its parent element, including its intended usage, purpose, or application where this is appropriate. [22.4.4. 22.4.5. 22.4.6. 22.4.7.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.translatable (@versionDate)

Member of model.descLike model.labelLike

Contained by

analysis: interp interpGrp

core: add corr del desc emph gap graphic head hi item l lg media meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic stage title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyp h iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figDesc figure notatedMusic

gaiji: char charDecl glyph

header: application category change handNote licence rendition tagUsage taxonomy

iso-fs: fDescr fsDescr

linking: ab join seg

textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript signed titlePart

transcr: damage metamark mod restore retrace space substJoin supplied surface surplus

May contain

core: abbr address bibl biblStruct choice cit date desc distinct email emph expan foreign gloss hi label list listBibl measure measureGrp mentioned name num ptr q quote ref rs said soCalled stage term time title

dictionaries: lang

figures: table

header: biblFull idno

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: am ex subst

Declaration

```
element desc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.translatable.attributes,
  macro.limitedContent}

```

Example

<desc> contains a brief description of the purpose and application for an element, attribute, attribute value, class, or entity. **</desc>**

Note TEI convention requires that this be expressed as a finite clause, beginning with an active verb.

<dictScrap> (dictionary scrap) encloses a part of a dictionary entry in which other phrase-level dictionary elements are freely combined. [9.1. 9.2.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.entryPart.top

Contained by

dictionaries: entry hom re sense superEntry

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number oRef oVar orth pRef pVar per pos pron re sense subc superEntry syll tns usg xr

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```

element dictScrap
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.entryPart      | model.morphLike      | model.phrase      | model.
  )
}

```

Example

```

<entry>
  <dictScrap>
    <orth>biryani</orth> or <orth>biriani</orth>
    <pron>(%bIrI"A:nI)</pron>

```

```
<def>any of a variety of Indian dishes ...</def>
<etym>[from <lang>Urdu</lang>]</etym>
</dictScrap>
</entry>
```

Note May contain any dictionary elements in any combination. This element is used to mark part of a dictionary entry in which lower level dictionary elements appear, but which does not itself form an identifiable structural unit.

<distinct> identifies any word or phrase which is regarded as linguistically distinct, for example as archaic, technical, dialectal, non-preferred, etc., or as forming part of a sublanguage. [3.3.2.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

@type specifies the sublanguage or register to which the word or phrase is being assigned

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

@time specifies how the phrase is distinct diachronically

Status Optional

Datatype data.text

@space specifies how the phrase is distinct diatopically

Status Optional

Datatype data.text

@social specifies how the phrase is distinct diastatically

Status Optional

Datatype data.text

Member of model.emphLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s span

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyp h iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage

iso-fs: fDescr fsDescr

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan
 foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```

element distinct
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  attribute time { data.text }?,
  attribute space { data.text }?,
  attribute social { data.text }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```

Next morning a boy
in that dormitory confided to his bosom friend, a
<distinct type="ps_slang">fag</distinct> of
Macrea's, that there was trouble in their midst which King
<distinct type="archaic">would fain</distinct>
keep secret.

```

<istributor> supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for the distribution of a text. [2.2.4.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.imprintPart model.publicationStmntPart

Contained by

core: bibl imprint

header: publicationStmnt

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element distributor { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example

```
<distributor>Oxford Text Archive</distributor>  
<distributor>Redwood and Burn Ltd</distributor>
```

<div> (text division) contains a subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text. [4.1.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition,
@xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf,
@next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs
(@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.divLike (@org, @sample)
(att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declaring (@decls)

Member of model.divLike

Contained by

textstructure: back body div front

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: bibl biblStruct cb cit desc divGen gap gb head index l label lb lg list listBibl
meeting milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage

dictionaries: entry entryFree superEntry

figures: figure notatedMusic table

header: biblFull

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate epigraph
floatingText opener postscript salute signed trailer

transcr: addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

Declaration

```
element div  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  att.divLike.attributes,  
  att.typed.attributes,  
}
```

```

att.declaring.attributes,
(
  ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
  (
    (
      ( ( ( model.divLike | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )+ )
      | (
          ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+,
          ( ( model.divLike | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )*
        )
    ),
    ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
  )?
)
}

```

Example

```

<body>
  <div type="part">
    <head>Fallacies of Authority</head>
    <p>The subject of which is Authority in various shapes, and the object,
to repress all
      exercise of the reasoning faculty.</p>
    <div n="1" type="chapter">
      <head>The Nature of Authority</head>
      <p>With reference to any proposed measures having for their object the
greatest
        happiness of the greatest number....</p>
      <div n="1.1" type="section">
        <head>Analysis of Authority</head>
        <p>What on any given occasion is the legitimate weight or influence to
be attached to
          authority ... </p>
      </div>
      <div n="1.2" type="section">
        <head>Appeal to Authority, in What Cases Fallacious.</head>
        <p>Reference to authority is open to the charge of fallacy when... </p>
      </div>
    </div>
  </div>
</body>

```

<divGen> (automatically generated text division) indicates the location at which a textual division generated automatically by a text-processing application is to appear. [3.8.2.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

@type specifies what type of generated text division (e.g. index, table of contents, etc.) is to appear.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Sample values include: **index** an index is to be generated and inserted at this point.

toc a table of contents

figlist a list of figures

tablist a list of tables

Note Valid values are application-dependent; those shown are of obvious utility in document production, but are by no means exhaustive.

Member of model.divGenLike model.frontPart

Contained by

textstructure: back body div front

May contain

core: head

Declaration

```
element divGen
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  model.headLike*
}
```

Example One use for this element is to allow document preparation software to generate an index and insert it in the appropriate place in the output. The example below assumes that the indexName attribute on <index> elements in the text has been used to specify index entries for the two generated indexes, named NAMES and THINGS:

```
<back>
  <div1 type="backmat">
    <head>Bibliography</head>
  </div1>
  <div1 type="backmat">
    <head>Indices</head>
    <divGen n="Index Nominum" type="NAMES"/>
    <divGen n="Index Rerum" type="THINGS"/>
  </div1>
</back>
```

Example Another use for <divGen> is to specify the location of an automatically produced table of contents:

```
<front>
  <divGen type="toc"/>
  <div>
    <head>Preface</head>
    <p> ... </p>
  </div>
</front>
```

Note This element is intended primarily for use in document production or manipulation, rather than in the transcription of pre-existing materials; it makes it easier to specify the location of indices, tables of contents, etc., to be generated by text preparation or word processing software.

<docAuthor> (document author) contains the name of the author of the document, as given on the title page (often but not always contained in a byline). [4.6.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*)

Member of model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

core: lg list

figures: table

textstructure: back body byline div front group titlePage

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element docAuthor
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```
<titlePage>
  <docTitle>
    <titlePart>Travels into Several Remote Nations of the World, in Four
      Parts.</titlePart>
  </docTitle>
  <byline> By <docAuthor>Lemuel Gulliver</docAuthor>, First a Surgeon,
    and then a Captain of several Ships</byline>
</titlePage>

```

Note The document author's name often occurs within a byline, but the `<docAuthor>` element may be used whether the `<byline>` element is used or not.

<docDate> (document date) contains the date of a document, as given (usually) on a title page. [4.6.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

@when gives the value of the date in standard form, i.e. YYYY-MM-DD.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.temporal.w3c`

Values a date in one of the formats specified in *XML Schema Part 2:*

Datatypes Second Edition

Note For simple dates, the when attribute should give the Gregorian or proleptic Gregorian date in the form (YYYY-MM-DD) specified by *XML Schema Part 2*.

Member of model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

core: lg list

figures: table

textstructure: back body div docImprint front group titlePage

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element docDate
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute when { data.temporal.w3c }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<docImprint>Oxford, Clarendon Press, <docDate>1987</docDate>
</docImprint>
```

Note Cf. the general <date> element in the core tag set. This specialized element is provided for convenience in marking and processing the date of the documents, since it is likely to require specialized handling for many applications.

<docEdition> (document edition) contains an edition statement as presented on a title page of a document. [4.6.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))

Member of model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

textstructure: back front titlePage

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element docEdition { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

Example

```
<docEdition>The Third edition Corrected</docEdition>
```

Note Cf. the <edition> element of bibliographic citation. As usual, the shorter name has been given to the more frequent element.

<docImprint> (document imprint) contains the imprint statement (place and date of publication, publisher name), as given (usually) at the foot of a title page. [4.6.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))

Member of model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

textstructure: back front titlePage

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned

milestone name note num orig pb ptr pubPlace publisher ref reg rs sic soCalled term
time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: docDate

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element docImprint
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.phrase      | pubPlace      | docDate      | publisher      | model.
```

Example

```
<docImprint>Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1987</docImprint>
```

Imprints may be somewhat more complex:

```
<docImprint>
  <pubPlace>London</pubPlace>
  Printed for <name>E. Nutt</name>,
  at
  <pubPlace>Royal Exchange</pubPlace>;
  <name>J. Roberts</name> in
  <pubPlace>wick-Lane</pubPlace>;
  <name>A. Dodd</name> without
  <pubPlace>Temple-Bar</pubPlace>;
  and <name>J. Graves</name> in
  <pubPlace>St. James's-street.</pubPlace>
  <date>1722.</date>
</docImprint>
```

Note Cf. the <imprint> element of bibliographic citations. As with title, author, and editions, the shorter name is reserved for the element likely to be used more often.

<docTitle> (document title) contains the title of a document, including all its constituents, as given on a title page. [4.6.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.canonical (@key, @ref)

Member of model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

textstructure: back front titlePage

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: cb gap gb index lb milestone note pb

figures: figure notatedMusic

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

textstructure: titlePart

transcr: addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

Declaration

```

element docTitle
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  ( model.global*, ( titlePart, model.global* )+ )
}

```

Example

```

<docTitle>
  <titlePart type="main">The DUNCIAD, VARIOURVM.</titlePart>
  <titlePart type="sub">WITH THE PROLEGOMENA of SCRIBLERUS.</titlePart>
</docTitle>

```

<domain> (domain of use) describes the most important social context in which the text was realized or for which it is intended, for example private vs. public, education, religion, etc. [15.2.1.]

Module corpus

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

@type categorizes the domain of use.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Sample values include: **art** art and entertainment

domestic domestic and private

religious religious and ceremonial

business business and work place

education education

govt (government) government and law

public other forms of public context

Member of model.textDescPart

Contained by

corpus: textDesc

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

dictionaries: lang

figures: figure notatedMusic

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

transcr: addSpan am damageSpan delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst substJoin

Declaration

```
element domain
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}

```

Example

```
<domain type="domestic"/>
<domain type="rel">religious broadcast</domain>

```

Note Usually empty, unless some further clarification of the type attribute is needed, in which case it may contain running prose. The list presented here is primarily for illustrative purposes.

<edition> (edition) describes the particularities of one edition of a text. [2.2.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.biblPart

Contained by

core: bibl monogr

header: editionStmt

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

1 ELEMENTS

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element edition { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example

```
<edition>First edition <date>Oct 1990</date>  
</edition>  
<edition n="S2">Students' edition</edition>
```

<editionStmt> (edition statement) groups information relating to one edition of a text. [2.2.2. 2.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of

Contained by

header: biblFull fileDesc

May contain

core: author editor meeting p respStmt

header: edition funder principal sponsor

linking: ab

Declaration

```
element editionStmt  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  ( model.pLike+ | ( edition, model.respLike* ) )  
}
```

Example

```
<editionStmt>  
  <edition n="S2">Students' edition</edition>  
  <respStmt>  
    <resp>Adapted by </resp>  
    <name>Elizabeth Kirk</name>  
  </respStmt>  
</editionStmt>
```

Example

```
<editionStmt>  
  <p>First edition, <date>Michaelmas Term, 1991.</date>  
  </p>  
</editionStmt>
```


<editor> contains a secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc. [3.11.2.2.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))

Member of model.respLike

Contained by

core: analytic bibl monogr series

header: editionStmt seriesStmt titleStmt

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element editor
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<editor>Eric Johnson</editor>
<editor role="illustrator">John Tenniel</editor>
```

Note A consistent format should be adopted. Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use generally recognized authority lists for the exact form of personal names.

<editorialDecl> (editorial practice declaration) provides details of editorial principles and practices applied during the encoding of a text. [2.3.3. 2.3. 15.3.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf,

1 ELEMENTS

@next, @prev, @exclude, @select) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) att.declarable (*@default*)

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

core: p

header: correction hyphenation interpretation normalization quotation segmentation
stdVals

linking: ab

Declaration

```
element editorialDecl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  ( model.pLike | model.editorialDeclPart )+
}
```

Example

```
<editorialDecl>
  <normalization>
    <p>All words converted to Modern American spelling using
      Websters 9th Collegiate dictionary
    </p>
  </normalization>
  <quotation marks="all">
    <p>All opening quotation marks converted to " all closing
      quotation marks converted to &cdq;.</p>
  </quotation>
</editorialDecl>
```

<email> (electronic mail address) contains an e-mail address identifying a location to which e-mail messages can be delivered. [3.5.2.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))

Member of model.addressLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s span

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figDesc
header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder
geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage
iso-fs: fDescr fsDescr
linking: ab seg
textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer
transcr: damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus
May contain
analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w
core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear
dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar
figures: figure formula notatedMusic
gaiji: g
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib
linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline
transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo
Declaration

element email { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
--

Example

```
<email>membership@tei-c.org</email>
```

Note The format of a modern Internet email address is defined in RFC 2822

<emph> (emphasized) marks words or phrases which are stressed or emphasized for linguistic or rhetorical effect. [3.3.2.2. 3.3.2.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.emphLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s span

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hypth
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder
geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage

iso-fs: fDescr fsDescr

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr
q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element emph { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

Example

```
You took the car and did <emph>what</emph>?!!
```

Example

```
<q>What it all comes to is this,</q> he said.  
<q>  
  <emph>What  
    does Christopher Robin do in the morning nowadays?</emph>  
</q>
```

<encodingDesc> (encoding description) documents the relationship between an electronic text and the source or sources from which it was derived. [2.3. 2.1.1.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.teiHeaderPart

Contained by

header: `teiHeader`

May contain

core: `p`

gaiji: `charDecl`

header: `appInfo classDecl editorialDecl geoDecl listPrefixDef projectDesc refsDecl
samplingDecl styleDefDecl tagsDecl`

iso-fs: `fsdDecl`

linking: `ab`

Declaration

```
element encodingDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( ( model.encodingDescPart | model.pLike )+ )
}
```

Example

```
<encodingDesc>
  <p>Basic encoding, capturing lexical information only. All
  hyphenation, punctuation, and variant spellings normalized. No
  formatting or layout information preserved.</p>
</encodingDesc>
```

<entry> contains a single structured entry in any kind of lexical resource, such as a dictionary or lexicon. [9.1. 9.2.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@rend`, `@style`, `@rendition`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) (`att.global.change` (`@change`)) `att.entryLike` (`@type`) `att.sortable` (`@sortKey`)

Member of `model.entryLike`

Contained by

dictionaries: `superEntry`

figures: `figure`

textstructure: `argument body div epigraph postscript`

May contain

analysis: `interp interpGrp span spanGrp`

core: `cb cit gap gb index lb milestone note pb ptr ref`

dictionaries: `def dictScrap etym form gramGrp hom re sense usg xr`

figures: `figure notatedMusic`

iso-fs: `fLib fs fvLib`

linking: `alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline`

transcr: `addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin`

Declaration

```
element entry
{
  att.global.attributes,
```

```
att.entryLike.attributes,  
att.sortable.attributes,  
( hom | sense | model.entryPart.top | model.global | model.ptrLike )+  
}
```

Example

```
<entry>  
<form>  
  <orth>disproof</orth>  
  <pron>dIs"pru:f</pron>  
</form>  
<gramGrp>  
  <pos>n</pos>  
</gramGrp>  
<sense n="1">  
  <def>facts that disprove something.</def>  
</sense>  
<sense n="2">  
  <def>the act of disproving.</def>  
</sense>  
</entry>
```

Note Like all elements, <entry> inherits an xml:id attribute from the class *global*. No restrictions are placed on the method used to construct xml:ids; one convenient method is to use the orthographic form of the headword, appending a disambiguating number where necessary. Identification codes are sometimes included on machine-readable tapes of dictionaries for in-house use.

<entryFree> (unstructured entry) contains a single unstructured entry in any kind of lexical resource, such as a dictionary or lexicon. [9.1. 9.2.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.entryLike (@type) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) att.sortable (@sortKey)

Member of model.entryLike

Contained by

figures: figure

textstructure: argument body div epigraph postscript

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref ref rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number oRef oVar orth pRef pVar per pos pron re sense subc superEntry syll tns usg xr

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g
header: biblFull idno
iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib
linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline
textstructure: floatingText
transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element entryFree
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.entryLike.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.entryPart      | model.morphLike      | model.phrase      | model.
```

Example

```
<entryFree>
  <orth>biryani</orth> or <orth>biriani</orth>
  <pron>(%bIrI"A:nI)</pron>
  <def>any of a variety of Indian dishes ...</def>
  <etym>[from <lang>Urdu</lang>]</etym>
</entryFree>
```

Note May contain any dictionary elements in any combination.

<epigraph> contains a quotation, anonymous or attributed, appearing at the start or end of a section or on a title page. [4.2.3. 4.2. 4.6.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

core: lg list

figures: table

textstructure: back body div front group opener titlePage

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: bibl biblStruct cb cit desc gap gb index l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage

dictionaries: entry entryFree superEntry

figures: figure notatedMusic table

header: biblFull

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

1 ELEMENTS

linking: ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

Declaration

```
element epigraph { att.global.attributes, ( model.common | model.global )* }
```

Example

```
<epigraph xml:lang="la">
  <cit>
    <bibl>Lucret.</bibl>
    <quote>
      <l part="F">petere inde coronam,</l>
      <l>Vnde prius nulli velarint tempora Musae.</l>
    </quote>
  </cit>
</epigraph>
```

<etym> (etymology) encloses the etymological information in a dictionary entry. [9.3.4.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))

Member of model.entryPart model.entryPart.top

Contained by

core: cit

dictionaries: dictScrap entry entryFree hom re sense

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: case def gen gram iType lang lbl mood number oRef oVar pRef pVar per tns usg xr

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element etym
{
```



```

att.global.attributes,
att.lexicographic.attributes,
(
  text
  | model.gLike      | model.phrase      | model.inter      | usg      | lbl      | def      | mode
)
}

```

Example

```

<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>publish</orth> ... </form>
  <etym>
    <lang>ME.</lang>
    <mentioned>publisshen</mentioned>,
    <lang>F.</lang>
    <mentioned>publier</mentioned>, <lang>L.</lang>
    <mentioned>publicare,
      publicatum</mentioned>. <xr>See <ref>public</ref>; cf. 2d
  </etym>
</entry> (From: Webster's Second International)

```

Note May contain character data mixed with any other elements defined in the dictionary tag set. There is no consensus on the internal structure of etymologies, or even on whether such a structure is appropriate. The <etym> element accordingly simply contains prose, within which names of languages, cited words, or parts of words, glosses, and examples will typically be prominent. The tagging of such internal objects is optional.

<ex> (editorial expansion) contains a sequence of letters added by an editor or transcriber when expanding an abbreviation. [11.3.1.2.]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.editorial

Contained by

analysis: cl pc phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyp h iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder
geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage

iso-fs: fDescr fsDescr

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

May contain

gaiji: g

Declaration

```
element ex { att.global.attributes, att.editLike.attributes, macro.xtext }
```

Example

```
The address is Southmoor <choice>  
<expan>R<ex>oa</ex>d</expan>  
<abbr>Rd</abbr>  
</choice>
```

<expan> (expansion) contains the expansion of an abbreviation. [3.5.5.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition,
@xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf,
@next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs
(@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant)
(att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging
(@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.editorial

Contained by

analysis: cl pc phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del desc
distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l
label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote
ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale
preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyp
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder
geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage

iso-fs: fDescr fsDescr

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w
core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear
dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar
figures: figure formula notatedMusic
gaiji: g
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib
linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline
transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```

element expan
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```

The address is Southmoor <choice>
  <expan>Road</expan>
  <abbr>Rd</abbr>
</choice>

```

Example

```

<expan xml:lang="la">
  <abbr>Imp</abbr>
  <ex>erator</ex>
</expan>

```

Note The content of this element should usually be a complete word or phrase. The <ex> element provided by the transcr module may be used to mark up sequences of letters supplied within such an expansion.

<extent> describes the approximate size of a text stored on some carrier medium or of some other object, digital or non-digital, specified in any convenient units. [2.2.3. 2.2. 3.11.2.3. 10.7.1.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.biblPart

Contained by

core: bibl monogr

header: biblFull fileDesc

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element extent { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example

```
<extent>3200 sentences</extent>
<extent>between 10 and 20 Mb</extent>
<extent>ten 3.5 inch high density diskettes</extent>
```

<f> (feature) represents a *feature value specification*, that is, the association of a name with a value of any of several different types. [18.2.]

Module iso-fs

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)

@name a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name>), providing a name for the feature.

Status Required

Datatype data.name

Values Any name.

@fVal (feature value) references any element which can be used to represent the value of a feature.

Status Optional

Datatype data.pointer

Values the identifier of an element representing a feature value

Note If this attribute is supplied as well as content, the value referenced is to be unified with that contained.

Member of ~~Group~~ *contained by*

iso-fs: bicond cond fLib fs if

May contain

gaiji: g

iso-fs: binary default fs numeric string symbol vAlt vColl vLabel vMerge vNot

Declaration

```
element f
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.datcat.attributes,
  attribute name { data.name },
  attribute fVal { data.pointer }?,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.featureVal )*
}
```

Schematron `<s:rule context="tei:fVal"> <s:assert test="not(tei:* and text)">` A feature value cannot contain both text and element content`</s:assert></s:rule>`

`<s:rule context="tei:fVal"> <s:report test="count(tei:*)>1">` A feature value can contain only one child element`</s:report></s:rule>`

Example

```
<f name="gender">
  <symbol value="feminine"/>
</f>
```

Example

```
<fs>
  <f name="voice">active</f>
  <f name="tense">SimPre</f>
</fs>
```

Note If the element is empty then a value must be supplied for the fVal attribute. The content of `<f>` may also be textual, with the assumption that the data type of the feature value is determined by the schema—this is the approach used in many language-technology-oriented projects and recommendations.

<fDecl> (feature declaration) declares a single feature, specifying its name, organization, range of allowed values, and optionally its default value. [18.11.]

Module iso-fs

Attributes Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@rend`, `@style`, `@rendition`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) (`att.global.change` (`@change`))

@name a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name>), indicating the name of the feature being declared; matches the name attribute of `<f>` elements in the text.

Status Required

Datatype `data.name`

Values any string of characters

@optional indicates whether or not the value of this feature may be present.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:boolean`

Default true

Note If a feature is marked as optional, it is possible for it to be omitted from a feature structure. If an obligatory feature is omitted, then it

is understood to have a default value, either explicitly declared, or, if no default is supplied, the special value any. If an optional feature is omitted, then it is understood to be missing and any possible value (including the default) is ignored.

Member of

iso-fs: fDecl

May contain

iso-fs: fDescr vDefault vRange

Declaration

```
element fDecl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute name { data.name },
  attribute optional { xsd:boolean }?,
  ( fDescr?, vRange, vDefault? )
}
```

Example

```
<fDecl name="INV">
  <fDescr>inverted sentence</fDescr>
  <vRange>
    <vAlt>
      <binary value="true"/>
      <binary value="false"/>
    </vAlt>
  </vRange>
  <vDefault>
    <binary value="false"/>
  </vDefault>
</fDecl>
```

<fDescr> (feature description (in FSD)) describes in prose what is represented by the feature being declared and its values. [18.11.]

Module iso-fs

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of

Contained by

iso-fs: fDecl

May contain

core: abbr address bibl biblStruct choice cit date desc distinct email emph expan foreign gloss hi label list listBibl measure measureGrp mentioned name num ptr q quote ref rs said soCalled stage term time title

dictionaries: lang

figures: table

header: biblFull idno

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: am ex subst

Declaration

```
element fDescr { att.global.attributes, macro.limitedContent }
```

Example

```
<fDecl name="INV">
  <fDescr>inverted sentence</fDescr>
  <vRange>
    <vAlt>
      <binary value="true"/>
      <binary value="false"/>
    </vAlt>
  </vRange>
  <vDefault>
    <binary value="false"/>
  </vDefault>
</fDecl>
```

Note May contain character data, phrase-level elements, and inter-level elements.

<fLib> (feature library) assembles a library of feature elements. [18.4.]

Module iso-fs

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.global.meta

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal sponsor

iso-fs: fsdDecl

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface
surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain

iso-fs: f

Declaration

```
element fLib { att.global.attributes, f+ }
```

Example

```
<fLib n="agreement features">
  <f name="person" xml:id="pers1">
    <symbol value="first"/>
  </f>
  <f name="person" xml:id="pers2">
    <symbol value="second"/>
  </f>
  <f name="number" xml:id="nums">
    <symbol value="singular"/>
  </f>
  <f name="number" xml:id="nump">
    <symbol value="plural"/>
  </f>
</fLib>
```

Note The global n attribute may be used to supply an informal name to categorize the library's contents.

<facsimile> contains a representation of some written source in the form of a set of images rather than as transcribed or encoded text. [11.1.]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.declaring (@decls)

Member of model.resourceLike

Contained by

textstructure: TEI

May contain

core: binaryObject graphic media

figures: formula

textstructure: back front

transcr: surface surfaceGrp

Declaration

```
element facsimile
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  ( front?, ( model.graphicLike | surface | surfaceGrp )+, back? )
}
```

Example


```
<facsimile>
  <graphic url="page1.png"/>
  <surface>
    <graphic url="page2-highRes.png"/>
    <graphic url="page2-lowRes.png"/>
  </surface>
  <graphic url="page3.png"/>
  <graphic url="page4.png"/>
</facsimile>
```

Example

```
<facsimile>
  <surface
    lrx="200"
    lry="300"
    ulx="0"
    uly="0">
    <graphic url="Bovelles-49r.png"/>
  </surface>
</facsimile>
```

<factuality> describes the extent to which the text may be regarded as imaginative or non-imaginative, that is, as describing a fictional or a non-fictional world. [15.2.1.]

Module corpus

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

@type categorizes the factuality of the text.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Legal values are: **fiction** the text is to be regarded as entirely imaginative

fact the text is to be regarded as entirely informative or factual

mixed the text contains a mixture of fact and fiction

inapplicable the fiction/fact distinction is not regarded as helpful or appropriate to this text

Member of model.textDescPart

Contained by

corpus: textDesc

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

dictionaries: lang

figures: figure notatedMusic

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

1 ELEMENTS

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

transcr: addSpan am damageSpan delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst
substJoin

Declaration

```
element factuality
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { "fiction" | "fact" | "mixed" | "inapplicable" }?,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}

```

Example

```
<factuality type="fiction"/>
```

Example

```
<factuality type="mixed">contains a mixture of gossip and
speculation about real people and events</factuality>
```

Note Usually empty, unless some further clarification of the type attribute is needed, in which case it may contain running prose. For many literary texts, a simple binary opposition between ‘fiction’ and ‘fact’ is naïve in the extreme; this parameter is not intended for purposes of subtle literary analysis, but as a simple means of characterizing the claimed fictiveness of a given text. No claim is made that works characterized as ‘fact’ are in any sense ‘true’.

<figDesc> (description of figure) contains a brief prose description of the appearance or content of a graphic figure, for use when documenting an image without displaying it. [14.4.]

Module figures

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of

Contained by

figures: figure

May contain

core: abbr address bibl biblStruct choice cit date desc distinct email emph expan foreign gloss hi label list listBibl measure measureGrp mentioned name num ptr q quote ref rs said soCalled stage term time title

dictionaries: lang

figures: table

header: biblFull idno

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: am ex subst

Declaration

```
element figDesc { att.global.attributes, macro.limitedContent }
```

Example

```
<figure>
  <graphic url="emblem1.png"/>
  <head>Emblemi d'Amore</head>
  <figDesc>A pair of naked winged cupids, each holding a
    flaming torch, in a rural setting.</figDesc>
</figure>
```

Note This element is intended for use as an alternative to the content of its parent <figure> element; for example, to display when the image is required but the equipment in use cannot display graphic images. It may also be used for indexing or documentary purposes.

<figure> groups elements representing or containing graphic information such as an illustration, formula, or figure. [14.4.]

Module figures

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.placement (@place) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.global

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figure table

gaiji: char glyph

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal sponsor

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb cit desc gap gb graphic head index l label lb lg list listBibl media milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage

1 ELEMENTS

dictionaries: entry entryFree superEntry

figures: figDesc figure formula notatedMusic table

header: biblFull

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

textstructure: closer floatingText postscript signed trailer

transcr: addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

Declaration

```
element figure
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    model.headLike | model.common | figDesc | model.graphicLike | model.glo
```

Example

```
<figure>
  <head>The View from the Bridge</head>
  <figDesc>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the
  foreground, and a
  series of buoys strung out between them.</figDesc>
  <graphic scale="0.5" url="http://www.example.org/fig1.png"/>
</figure>
```

<fileDesc> (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file. [2.2. 2.1.1.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of

Contained by

header: teiHeader

May contain

header: editionStmt extent notesStmt publicationStmt seriesStmt sourceDesc titleStmt

Declaration

```
element fileDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    (
      titleStmt,
      editionStmt?,
      extent?,
      publicationStmt,
      seriesStmt?,
      notesStmt?
    ),
  ),
```

```
    sourceDesc+
  )
}
```

Example

```
<fileDesc>
  <titleStmt>
    <title>The shortest possible TEI document</title>
  </titleStmt>
  <publicationStmt>
    <p>Distributed as part of TEI P5</p>
  </publicationStmt>
  <sourceDesc>
    <p>No print source exists: this is an original digital text</p>
  </sourceDesc>
</fileDesc>
```

Note The major source of information for those seeking to create a catalogue entry or bibliographic citation for an electronic file. As such, it provides a title and statements of responsibility together with details of the publication or distribution of the file, of any series to which it belongs, and detailed bibliographic notes for matters not addressed elsewhere in the header. It also contains a full bibliographic description for the source or sources from which the electronic text was derived.

<floatingText> contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, which interrupts the text containing it at any point and after which the surrounding text resumes. [4.3.2.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.declaring (@decls) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.qLike

Contained by

core: add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence rendition tagUsage

iso-fs: fDescr fsDescr

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript signed titlePart

transcr: damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: cb gap gb index lb milestone note pb

figures: figure notatedMusic

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

textstructure: back body front group

transcr: addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

Declaration

```
element floatingText
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    model.global*,
    ( front, model.global* )?,
    ( body | group ),
    model.global*,
    ( back, model.global* )?
  )
}
```

Example

```
<body>
  <div type="scene">
    <sp>
      <p>Hush, the players begin...</p>
    </sp>
    <floatingText type="pwp">
      <body>
        <div type="act">
          <sp>
            <l>In Athens our tale takes place ....</l>
          </sp>
        </div>
      </body>
    </floatingText>
    <sp>
      <p>Now that the play is finished ...</p>
    </sp>
  </div>
</body>
```

Note A floating text has the same content as any other and may thus be interrupted by another floating text, or contain a group of tessellated texts.

<foreign> (foreign) identifies a word or phrase as belonging to some language other than that of the surrounding text. [3.3.2.1.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.emphLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s span

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage

iso-fs: fDescr fsDescr

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element foreign { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example

```
This is  
heathen Greek to you still? Your <foreign xml:lang="la">lapis  
philosophicus</foreign>?
```

Note The global `xml:lang` attribute should be supplied for this element to identify the language of the word or phrase marked. As elsewhere, its value should be a language tag as defined in 6.1.. This element is intended for use only where no other element is available to mark the phrase or words concerned. The global `xml:lang` attribute should be used in preference to this element where it is intended to mark the language of the whole of some text element. The <distinct> element may be used to identify phrases belonging to sublanguages or registers not generally regarded as true languages.

<form> (form information group) groups all the information on the written and spoken forms of one headword. [9.3.1.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))
@type classifies form as simple, compound, etc.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Suggested values include: **simple** single free lexical item

lemma the headword itself

variant a variant form

compound word formed from simple lexical items

derivative word derived from headword

inflected word in other than usual dictionary form

phrase multiple-word lexical item

Member of model.entryPart model.entryPart.top model.formPart

Contained by

core: cit

dictionaries: dictScrap entry entryFree form hom re sense superEntry

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number oRef oVar orth pRef pVar per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element form
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  attribute type
  {
    "simple"
    | "lemma"
    | "variant"
    | "compound"
```



```

    | "derivative"
    | "inflected"
    | "phrase"
    | xsd:Name
  }?,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.phrase      | model.inter      | model.formPart      | model.globa
  }

```

Example

```

<form>
  <orth>zaptié</orth>
  <orth>zapyé</orth>
</form>

```

(from TLFi)

<formula> contains a mathematical or other formula. [14.2.]

Module figures

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

@notation names the notation used for the content of the element.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Member of model.graphicLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figure formula table

gaiji: char glyph

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: damage facsimile fw metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface surplus zone

May contain

core: binaryObject graphic hi media

figures: formula

Declaration

```
element formula
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute notation { data.enumerated }?,
  ( text | model.graphicLike | model.hiLike )*
}
```

Example

```
<formula notation="tex">$E=mc^2</formula>
```

Example

```
<formula notation="none">E=mc<hi rend="sup">2</hi>
</formula>
```

Example

```
<formula notation="mathml">
  <m:math>
    <m:mi>E</m:mi>
    <m:mo>=</m:mo>
    <m:mi>m</m:mi>
    <m:msup>
      <m:mrow>
        <m:mi>c</m:mi>
      </m:mrow>
      <m:mrow>
        <m:mn>2</m:mn>
      </m:mrow>
    </m:msup>
  </m:math>
</formula>
```

<front> (front matter) contains any prefatory matter (headers, title page, prefaces, dedications, etc.) found at the start of a document, before the main body. [4.6. 4.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.declaring (@decls)

Member of

Contained by

textstructure: floatingText text

transcr: facsimile

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: cb divGen gap gb head index lb milestone note pb

figures: figure notatedMusic

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

textstructure: argument byline closer div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph postscript signed titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

Declaration

```

element front
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  (
    ( model.frontPart | model.pLike.front | model.global )*,
    (
      (
        ( model.div1Like ),
        ( model.frontPart | model.div1Like | model.global )*
      )
      | (
        ( model.divLike ),
        ( model.frontPart | model.divLike | model.global )*
      )
    )?
  ),
  ( ( ( model.divBottomPart ), ( model.divBottomPart | model.global )* )? )
}

```

Example

```

<front>
  <epigraph>
    <quote>Nam Sibyllam quidem Cumis ego ipse oculis meis
      vidi in ampulla pendere, et cum illi pueri dicerent:
    <q xml:lang="grc">Sibylla ti weleis</q>; respondebat
      illa: <q xml:lang="grc">apowanein welo.</q>
    </quote>
  </epigraph>
  <div type="dedication">
    <p>For Ezra Pound <q xml:lang="it">il miglior fabbro.</q>
  </p>
  </div>
</front>

```

Example

```

<front>
  <div type="dedication">
    <p>To our three selves</p>
  </div>
  <div type="preface">
    <head>Author's Note</head>
    <p>All the characters in this book are purely imaginary, and if the
      author has used names that may suggest a reference to living persons
      she has done so inadvertently.
    ...</p>
  </div>
</front>

```

<fs> (feature structure) represents a *feature structure*, that is, a collection of feature-value pairs organized as a structural unit. [18.2.]

Module iso-fs

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) att.datcat (*@datcat*, *@valueDatcat*)

@type specifies the type of the feature structure.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

@feats (features) references the feature-value specifications making up this feature structure.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Values one or more identifiers of <f> elements.

Note May be used either instead of having features as content, or in addition. In the latter case, the features referenced and contained are unified.

Member of model.featureVal.complex model.global.meta

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal sponsor

iso-fs: bicond cond f fvLib if vAlt vColl vDefault vLabel vMerge vNot vRange

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain

iso-fs: f

Declaration

```
element fs
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.datcat.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  attribute feats { list { data.pointer+ } }?,
}
```

```
    f*
  }
```

Example

```
<fs type="agreement_structure">
  <f name="person">
    <symbol value="third"/>
  </f>
  <f name="number">
    <symbol value="singular"/>
  </f>
</fs>
```

<fsConstraints> (feature-structure constraints) specifies constraints on the content of valid feature structures. [18.11.]

Module iso-fs

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of

Contained by

iso-fs: fsDecl

May contain

iso-fs: bicond cond

Declaration

```
element fsConstraints { att.global.attributes, ( cond | bicond )* }
```

Example

```
<fsConstraints>
  <cond>
    <fs/>
    <then/>
    <fs/>
  </cond>
</fsConstraints>
```

Note May contain a series of conditional or biconditional elements.

<fsDecl> (feature structure declaration) declares one type of feature structure. [18.11.]

Module iso-fs

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

@type gives a name for the type of feature structure being declared.

Status Required

Datatype data.enumerated

Values any convenient string of characters.

@baseTypes gives the name of one or more typed feature structures from which this type inherits feature specifications and constraints; if this type includes a feature specification with the same name as that of any of those specified by this attribute, or if more than one specification of the same name is inherited, then the set of possible values is defined by unification. Similarly, the set of constraints applicable is derived by combining those specified explicitly within this element with those implied by the baseTypes attribute. When no baseTypes attribute is specified, no feature specification or constraint is inherited.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.name` separated by whitespace

Values one or more names as defined by the W3C XML Specification

Note Inheritance is defined here as a monotonous relation. The process of combining constraints may result in a contradiction, for example if two specifications for the same feature specify disjoint ranges of values, and at least one such specification is mandatory. In such a case, there is no valid representative for the type being defined.

Member of *Contained by*

iso-fs: fsDecl

May contain

iso-fs: fDecl fsConstraints fsDescr

Declaration

```
element fsDecl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated },
  attribute baseTypes { list { data.name+ } }?,
  ( fsDescr?, fDecl+, fsConstraints? )
}
```

Example

```
<fsDecl type="SomeName">
  <fsDescr>Describes what this type of fs represents</fsDescr>
  <fDecl name="featureOne">
    <vRange/>
  </fDecl>
  <fDecl name="featureTwo">
    <vRange/>
  </fDecl>
  <fsConstraints/>
</fsDecl>
```

<fsDescr> (feature system description (in FSD)) describes in prose what is represented by the type of feature structure declared in the enclosing fsDecl. [18.11.]

Module iso-fs

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf,

@next, @prev, @exclude, @select) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))

Member of

Contained by

iso-fs: fsDecl

May contain

core: abbr address bibl biblStruct choice cit date desc distinct email emph expan foreign gloss hi label list listBibl measure measureGrp mentioned name num ptr q quote ref rs said soCalled stage term time title

dictionaries: lang

figures: table

header: biblFull idno

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: am ex subst

Declaration

```
element fsDescr { att.global.attributes, macro.limitedContent }
```

Example

```
<fsDecl type="Agreement">
  <fsDescr>This type of feature structure encodes the features
    for subject-verb agreement in English</fsDescr>
  <fDecl name="PERS">
    <fDescr>person (first, second, or third)</fDescr>
    <vRange>
      <vAlt>
        <symbol value="first"/>
        <symbol value="second"/>
        <symbol value="third"/>
      </vAlt>
    </vRange>
  </fDecl>
  <fDecl name="NUM">
    <fDescr>number (singular or plural)</fDescr>
    <vRange>
      <vAlt>
        <symbol value="singular"/>
        <symbol value="plural"/>
      </vAlt>
    </vRange>
  </fDecl>
</fsDecl>
```

Note May contain character data, phrase-level elements, and inter-level elements.

<fsDecl> (feature system declaration) IMPACT: fsDecl can contain, in addition to standard TEI feature-structure declarations and links, also feature or feature-value libraries. [18.11.]

Module iso-fs

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))

Member of model.encodingDescPart model.resourceLike

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

textstructure: TEI

May contain

iso-fs: fLib fsDecl fsdLink fvLib

Declaration

```
element fsdDecl { att.global.attributes, ( fsDecl | fsdLink | fLib | fvLib )* }
```

Example

```
<fsdDecl>
  <fsDecl type="GPSG">
    <fDecl name="GPSG_feat1" xml:id="GPSG-1">
      <vRange>
        <vAlt>
          <symbol value="red"/>
          <symbol value="blue"/>
          <symbol value="green"/>
        </vAlt>
      </vRange>
    </fDecl>
  </fsDecl>
  <fsdLink
    target="http://www.example.com/fsdLib.xml#LX123"
    type="subentry"/>
</fsdDecl>
```

<fsdLink/> (feature structure declaration link) associates the name of a typed feature structure with a feature structure declaration for it. [18.11.]

Module iso-fs

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

@type identifies the type of feature structure to be documented; this will be the value of the type attribute on at least one feature structure.

Status Required

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Values any string of characters.

@target supplies a pointer to a feature structure declaration (<fsDecl>) element within the current document or elsewhere.

Status Required

Datatype `data.pointer`

Member of

iso-fs: fsdDecl

May contain Empty element

Declaration


```
element fsdLink
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated },
  attribute target { data.pointer },
  empty
}
```

Example

```
<fsdLink
  target="http://www.example.com/fsdLib.xml#L1234"
  type="subentry"/>
```

<funder> (funding body) specifies the name of an individual, institution, or organization responsible for the funding of a project or text. [2.2.1.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.respLike

Contained by

core: bibl monogr

header: editionStmnt titleStmnt

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

dictionaries: lang

figures: figure notatedMusic

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

transcr: addSpan am damageSpan delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst substJoin

Declaration

```
element funder { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq.limited }
```

Example

```
<funder>The National Endowment for the Humanities, an independent federal
agency</funder>
<funder>Directorate General XIII of the Commission of the European
Communities</funder>
<funder>The Andrew W. Mellon Foundation</funder>
<funder>The Social Sciences and Humanities Research Council of
Canada</funder>
```

Note Funders provide financial support for a project; they are distinct from *sponsors*, who provide intellectual support and authority.

<fvLib> (feature-value library) assembles a library of reusable feature value elements (including complete feature structures). [18.4.]

Module iso-fs

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.global.meta

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal sponsor

iso-fs: fsdDecl

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain

iso-fs: binary default fs numeric string symbol vAlt vColl vLabel vMerge vNot

Declaration

```
element fvLib { att.global.attributes, model.featureVal* }
```

Example

```
<fvLib n="symbolic values">
  <symbol value="first" xml:id="sfirst"/>
  <symbol value="second" xml:id="ssecond"/>
  <symbol value="singular" xml:id="ssing"/>
  <symbol value="plural" xml:id="splur"/>
</fvLib>
```

Note A feature value library may include any number of values of any kind, including multiple occurrences of identical values such as **<binary value="true"/>** or

default. The only thing guaranteed unique in a feature value library is the set of labels used to identify the values.

<fw> (forme work) contains a running head (e.g. a header, footer), catchword, or similar material appearing on the current page. [11.6.]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) att.placement (*@place*)

@type classifies the material encoded according to some useful typology.

Status Recommended

Datatype data.enumerated

Sample values include: **header** a running title at the top of the page

footer a running title at the bottom of the page

pageNum (page number) a page number or foliation symbol

lineNum (line number) a line number, either of prose or poetry

sig (signature) a signature or gathering symbol

catch (catchword) a catch-word

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list listBibl measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal sponsor

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc subst supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element fw
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<fw place="bottom" type="sig">C3</fw>
```

Note Where running heads are consistent throughout a chapter or section, it is usually more convenient to relate them to the chapter or section, e.g. by use of the `rend` attribute. The `<fw>` element is intended for cases where the running head changes from page to page, or where details of page layout and the internal structure of the running heads are of paramount importance.

<g> (character or glyph) represents a glyph, or a non-standard character. [5.]

Module gaiji

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

@ref points to a description of the character or glyph intended.

Status Optional

Datatype data.pointer

Values a pointer to some another element.

Member of model.gLike

Contained by

analysis: c cl interp m pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor
email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure
measureGrp mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs
said series sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyp
iType lang lbl mood number oVar orth pVar per pos pron re sense stress subc syll
tns usg xr

figures: cell

gaiji: mapping value

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote idno licence
iso-fs: f string
linking: ab seg
textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer
transcr: am damage ex fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus
May contain Character data only
Declaration

```

element g
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute ref { data.pointer }?,
  text
}

```

Example

```
<g ref="#ctlig">ct</g>
```

This example points to a <glyph> element with the identifier **ctlig** like the following:

```
<glyph xml:id="ctlig"/>
```

Example

```
<g ref="#per-glyph">per</g>
```

The medieval brevigraph per could similarly be considered as an individual glyph, defined in a <glyph> element with the identifier **per** like the following:

```
<glyph xml:id="per-glyph"/>
```

Note The name g is short for *gaiji*, which is the Japanese term for a non-standardized character or glyph.

<gap> (gap) indicates a point where material has been omitted in a transcription, whether for editorial reasons described in the TEI header, as part of sampling practice, or because the material is illegible, invisible, or inaudible. [3.4.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

@reason gives the reason for omission. Sample values include sampling, inaudible, irrelevant, cancelled.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.word` separated by whitespace

Values any short indication of the reason for the omission.

@hand in the case of text omitted from the transcription because of deliberate deletion by an identifiable hand, signifies the hand which made the deletion.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.pointer`

Values must point to a hand identifier typically but not necessarily declared in the document header (see section 11.3.2.1.).

@agent In the case of text omitted because of damage, categorizes the cause of the damage, if it can be identified.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Sample values include: **rubbing** damage results from rubbing of the leaf edges

mildew damage results from mildew on the leaf surface

smoke damage results from smoke

Member of model.global.edit

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal sponsor

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain

core: desc

Declaration

```
element gap
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  attribute reason { list { data.word+ } }?,
  attribute hand { data.pointer }?,
  attribute agent { data.enumerated }?,
  ( model.descLike | model.certLike )*
}
```

Example

```
<gap quantity="4" reason="illegible" unit="chars"/>
```

Example

```
<gap quantity="1" reason="sampling" unit="essay"/>
```

Example

```
<del>
  <gap
    atLeast="4"
    atMost="8"
    reason="illegible"
    unit="chars"/>
</del>
```

Example

```
<gap extent="unknown" reason="lost" unit="lines"/>
```

Note The <gap>, <unclear>, and core tag elements may be closely allied in use with the <damage> and <supplied> elements, available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources. See section 11.3.3.2. for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance. The <gap> tag simply signals the editors decision to omit or inability to transcribe a span of text. Other information, such as the interpretation that text was deliberately erased or covered, should be indicated using the relevant tags, such as in the case of deliberate deletion.

<gb/> (gathering begins) marks the point in a transcribed codex at which a new gathering or quire begins. [3.10.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.breaking (@break)

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list listBibl measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote
language licence principal sponsor

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate
docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur
opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc subst supplied surface
surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element gb
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  att.breaking.attributes,
  empty
}
```

Example

```
<gb n="iii"/>
<pb n="2r"/>
<pb n="2v"/>
```

Note By convention, <gb> elements should appear at the start of the first page in the gathering. The global n attribute indicates the number or other value used to identify this gathering in a collation. The type attribute may be used to further characterize the gathering in any respect.

<gen> (gender) identifies the morphological gender of a lexical item, as given in the dictionary. [9.3.1.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))

Member of model.morphLike

Contained by

dictionaries: dictScrap entryFree etym form gramGrp

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr
q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g
header: biblFull idno
iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib
linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline
textstructure: floatingText
transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element gen
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}
```

Example

```
<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>pamplemousse</orth>
  </form>
  <gramGrp>
    <pos>noun</pos>
    <gen>masculine</gen>
  </gramGrp>
</entry>
```

Note May contain character data and phrase-level elements. Typical content will be *masculine, feminine, neuter* etc. This element is synonymous with <gram type="gender">.

<geoDecl> (geographic coordinates declaration) documents the notation and the datum used for geographic coordinates expressed as content of the <geo> element elsewhere within the document. [2.3.8.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.declarable (@default)

@datum supplies a commonly used code name for the datum employed.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Suggested values include: **WGS84** (World Geodetic System) a pair of numbers to be interpreted as latitude followed by longitude according to the World Geodetic System.[Default]

MGRS (Military Grid Reference System) the values supplied are geospatial entity object codes, based on

OSGB36 (ordnance survey great britain) the value supplied is to be interpreted as a British National Grid Reference.

ED50 (European Datum coordinate system) the value supplied is to be interpreted as latitude followed by longitude according to the European Datum coordinate system.

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```

element geoDecl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  attribute datum { "WGS84" | "MGRS" | "OSGB36" | "ED50" | xsd:Name }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```
<geoDecl datum="OSGB36"/>
```

<gloss> identifies a phrase or word used to provide a gloss or definition for some other word or phrase. [3.3.4.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.declaring (@decls) att.translatable (@versionDate) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.cReferencing (@cRef)

Member of model.emphLike model.glossLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s span

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct
editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label
measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref
reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale
preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr
figures: cell figDesc
header: authority catDesc category change classCode creation distributor edition extent
funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage
taxonomy
iso-fs: fDescr fsDescr
linking: ab joinGrp seg
textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer
transcr: damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus
May contain
analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w
core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear
dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar
figures: figure formula notatedMusic
gaiji: g
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib
linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline
transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo
Declaration

```
element gloss
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.translatable.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.cReferencing.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```
We may define <term rend="sc" xml:id="tdpv">discoursal point of view</term>
as
<gloss target="#tdpv">the relationship, expressed
through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other
addresser, and the
fiction.</gloss>
```

Note The target and cRef attributes are mutually exclusive.

<glyph> (character glyph) provides descriptive information about a character glyph.

Module gaiji

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition,
@xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf,

@next, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))

Member of

Contained by

gaiji: charDecl

May contain

core: binaryObject desc graphic media note

figures: figure formula

gaiji: charProp glyphName mapping

Declaration

```
element glyph
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    glyphName?,
    model.descLike*,
    charProp*,
    mapping*,
    figure*,
    model.graphicLike*,
    model.noteLike*
  )
}
```

Example

```
<glyph xml:id="rstroke">
  <glyphName>LATIN SMALL LETTER R WITH A FUNNY STROKE</glyphName>
  <charProp>
    <localName>entity</localName>
    <value>rstroke</value>
  </charProp>
  <figure>
    <graphic url="glyph-rstroke.png"/>
  </figure>
</glyph>
```

<glyphName> (character glyph name) contains the name of a glyph, expressed following Unicode conventions for character names.

Module gaiji

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))

Member of

Contained by

gaiji: glyph

May contain Character data only

Declaration `element glyphName { att.global.attributes, text }`

Example

<glyphName>CIRCLED IDEOGRAPH 4EBA</glyphName>

Note For characters of non-ideographic scripts, a name following the conventions for Unicode names should be chosen. For ideographic scripts, an *Ideographic Description Sequence* (IDS) as described in Chapter 10.1 of the Unicode Standard is recommended where possible. Projects working in similar fields are recommended to coordinate and publish their list of <glyphName>s to facilitate data exchange.

<gram> (grammatical information) within an entry in a dictionary or a terminological data file, contains grammatical information relating to a term, word, or form. [9.3.2.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))

@type classifies the grammatical information given according to some convenient typology—in the case of terminological information, preferably the dictionary of data element types specified in ISO 12620.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Sample values include: **pos** (part of speech) any of the word classes to which a word may be assigned in a given language, based on form, meaning, or a combination of features, e.g. noun, verb, adjective, etc.

gen (gender) formal classification by which nouns and pronouns, and often accompanying modifiers, are grouped and inflected, or changed in form, so as to control certain syntactic relationships

num (number) grammatical number, e.g. singular, plural, dual, ...

animate animate or inanimate

proper proper noun or common noun

Note A much fuller list of values for the type attribute may be generated from the data category registry accessible from <http://www.isocat.org> and maintained by ISO technical committee 37.

Member of model.morphLike

Contained by

dictionaries: dictScrap entryFree etym form gramGrp

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g
header: biblFull idno
iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib
linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline
textstructure: floatingText
transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```

element gram
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.paraContent}
  
```

Example

```

<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>pamplemousse</orth>
  </form>
  <gramGrp>
    <gram type="pos">noun</gram>
    <gram type="gen">masculine</gram>
  </gramGrp>
</entry>
  
```

Note In terminological data, the <gram> element usually refers to the most recently specified <term> or <otherForm> element. In flat term entries, the group and depend attributes may be used to indicate exceptions to this general rule. In dictionaries, the element typically relates to the form or forms with which it is grouped in a <form> or other grouping element.

<gramGrp> (grammatical information group) groups morpho-syntactic information about a lexical item, e.g. <pos>, <gen>, <number>, <case>, or <iType> (inflectional class). [9.3.2.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.entryPart model.entryPart.top model.gramPart

Contained by

core: cit

dictionaries: dictScrap entry entryFree form gramGrp hom re sense

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb list listBibl

measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote
 ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear
dictionaries: case colloc gen gram gramGrp iType lang lbl mood number oRef oVar pRef
 pVar per pos subc tns usg
figures: figure formula notatedMusic table
gaiji: g
header: biblFull idno
iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib
linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline
textstructure: floatingText
transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo
Declaration

```

element gramGrp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.phrase      | model.inter      | model.gramPart      | model.globa
  )
}

```

Example

```

<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>luire</orth>
  </form>
  <gramGrp>
    <pos>verb</pos>
    <subc>intransitive</subc>
  </gramGrp>
</entry>

```

<graphic> indicates the location of an inline graphic, illustration, or figure. [3.9.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition,
 @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf,
 @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs
 (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.media (@width, @height, @scale)
 (att.internetMedia (@mimeType)) att.resourced (@url) att.declaring (@decls)

Member of model.graphicLike model.titlepagePart

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email
 emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure
 mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic
 soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: char glyph

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: damage facsimile fw metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface
surplus zone

May contain

core: desc

Declaration

```
element graphic
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.media.attributes,
  att.resourced.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  model.descLike*
}
```

Example

```
<figure>
  <graphic url="fig1.png"/>
  <head>Figure One: The View from the Bridge</head>
  <figDesc>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the
  foreground, and a
  series of buoys strung out between them.</figDesc>
</figure>
```

Note The mimeType attribute should be used to supply the MIME media type of the image specified by the url attribute.

<group> contains the body of a composite text, grouping together a sequence of distinct texts (or groups of such texts) which are regarded as a unit for some purpose, for example the collected works of an author, a sequence of prose essays, etc. [4. 4.3.1. 15.1.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.declaring (@decls)

Member of

Contained by

textstructure: floatingText group text

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: cb gap gb head index lb meeting milestone note pb

figures: figure notatedMusic

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph group opener
postscript salute signed text trailer

transcr: addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

Declaration

```
element group
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    ( ( text | group ), ( text | group | model.global )* ),
    model.divBottom*
  )
}
```

Example

```
<text>
  <front/>
  <group>
    <text/>
    <text/>
  </group>
</text>
```

<handNote> (note on hand) describes a particular style or hand distinguished within a manuscript. [10.7.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.handFeatures (@scribe, @scribeRef, @script, @scriptRef, @medium, @scope)

Member of

Contained by

transcr: handNotes

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

1 ELEMENTS

linking: ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element handNote
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.handFeatures.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

Example

```
<handNote scope="sole">
  <p>Written in insular phase II half-uncial with interlinear Old English
  gloss in an
  Anglo-Saxon pointed minuscule.</p>
</handNote>

```

<handNotes> contains one or more <handNote> elements documenting the different hands identified within the source texts. [11.3.2.1.]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.profileDescPart

Contained by

header: profileDesc

May contain

header: handNote

Declaration

```
element handNotes { att.global.attributes, handNote+ }
```

Example

```
<handNotes>
  <handNote medium="brown-ink" script="copperplate" xml:id="H1">Carefully
  written with regular descenders</handNote>
  <handNote medium="pencil" script="print" xml:id="H2">Unschoolled
  scrawl</handNote>
</handNotes>

```

<handShift/> marks the beginning of a sequence of text written in a new hand, or the beginning of a scribal stint. [11.3.2.1.]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf,

(@next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.handFeatures (@scribe, @scribeRef, @script, @scriptRef, @medium, @scope) att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)

@new identifies the new hand.

Status Recommended

Datatype data.pointer

Values must refer to a <handNote> element, typically but not necessarily declared in the current document header (see section 11.3.2.1.).

Note This attribute serves the same function as the hand attribute provided for those elements which are members of the att.transcriptional class. It may be renamed at a subsequent major release.

Member of model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: cl pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: am damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element handShift
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.handFeatures.attributes,
  att.responsibility.attributes,
  attribute new { data.pointer }?,
  empty
}
```

Example

```
<l>When wolde the cat dwelle in his ynne</l>
<handShift medium="greenish-ink"/>
<l>And if the cattes skynne be slyk <handShift medium="black-ink"/> and
gaye</l>
```

Note The <handShift> element may be used either to denote a shift in the document hand (as from one scribe to another, on one writing style to another). Or, it may indicate a shift within a document hand, as a change of writing style, character or ink. Like other milestone elements, it should appear at the point of transition from some other state to the state which it describes.

<head> (heading) contains any type of heading, for example the title of a section, or the heading of a list, glossary, manuscript description, etc. [4.2.1.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.headLike model.pLike.front

Contained by

core: divGen lg list listBibl

figures: figure table

textstructure: argument back body div front group postscript

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```

element head
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    text
    | lg      | model.gLike      | model.phrase      | model.inter      | model.Like      | model.
  )
}

```

Example The most common use for the <head> element is to mark the headings of sections. In older writings, the headings or *incipits* may be rather longer than usual in modern works. If a section has an explicit ending as well as a heading, it should be marked as a <trailer>, as in this example:

```

<div1 n="I" type="book">
  <head>In the name of Christ here begins the first book of the
ecclesiastical history of
  Georgius Florentinus, known as Gregory, Bishop of Tours.</head>
  <div2 type="section">
    <head>In the name of Christ here begins Book I of the history.</head>
    <p>Proposing as I do ...</p>
    <p>From the Passion of our Lord until the death of Saint Martin four

```

```
hundred and twelve
  years passed.</p>
  <trailer>Here ends the first Book, which covers five thousand, five
hundred and ninety-six
  years from the beginning of the world down to the death of Saint
Martin.</trailer>
</div2>
</div1>
```

Example The <head> element is also used to mark headings of other units, such as lists:

```
With a few exceptions, connectives are equally
useful in all kinds of discourse: description, narration, exposition,
argument. <list type="simple">
  <head>Connectives</head>
  <item>above</item>
  <item>accordingly</item>
  <item>across from</item>
  <item>adjacent to</item>
  <item>again</item>
  <item/>
</list>
```

Note The <head> element is used for headings at all levels; software which treats (e.g.) chapter headings, section headings, and list titles differently must determine the proper processing of a <head> element based on its structural position. A <head> occurring as the first element of a list is the title of that list; one occurring as the first element of a <div1> is the title of that chapter or section.

<headItem> (heading for list items) contains the heading for the item or gloss column in a glossary list or similar structured list. [3.7.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global-linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global-analytic (@ana)) (att.global-facs (@facs)) (att.global-change (@change))

Member of

Contained by

core: list

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element headItem { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example

```
The simple, straightforward statement of an  
idea is preferable to the use of a worn-out expression. <list type="gloss">  
<headLabel rend="small caps">TRITE</headLabel>  
<headItem rend="small caps">SIMPLE, STRAIGHTFORWARD</headItem>  
<label>bury the hatchet</label>  
<item>stop fighting, make peace</item>  
<label>at loose ends</label>  
<item>disorganized</item>  
<label>on speaking terms</label>  
<item>friendly</item>  
<label>fair and square</label>  
<item>completely honest</item>  
<label>at death's door</label>  
<item>near death</item>  
</list>
```

Note The <headItem> element may appear only if each item in the list is preceded by a <label>.

<headLabel> (heading for list labels) contains the heading for the label or term column in a glossary list or similar structured list. [3.7.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of

Contained by

core: list

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

element headLabel { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
--

Example

```
The simple, straightforward statement of an
idea is preferable to the use of a worn-out expression. <list type="gloss">
  <headLabel rend="small caps">TRITE</headLabel>
  <headItem rend="small caps">SIMPLE, STRAIGHTFORWARD</headItem>
  <label>bury the hatchet</label>
  <item>stop fighting, make peace</item>
  <label>at loose ends</label>
  <item>disorganized</item>
  <label>on speaking terms</label>
  <item>friendly</item>
  <label>fair and square</label>
  <item>completely honest</item>
  <label>at death's door</label>
  <item>near death</item>
</list>
```

Note The <headLabel> element may appear only if each item in the list is preceded by a <label>.

<hi> (highlighted) marks a word or phrase as graphically distinct from the surrounding text, for reasons concerning which no claim is made. [3.3.2.2. 3.3.2.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.hiLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyp h iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figDesc formula

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage

iso-fs: fDescr fsDescr

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w
core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr
q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear
dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar
figures: figure formula notatedMusic table
gaiji: g
header: biblFull idno
iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib
linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline
textstructure: floatingText
transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo
Declaration

```
element hi { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

Example

```
<hi rend="gothic">And this Indenture further witnesseth</hi>  
that the said <hi rend="italic">Walter Shandy</hi>, merchant,  
in consideration of the said intended marriage ...
```

<hom> (homograph) groups information relating to one homograph within an entry. [9.2.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))

Member of model.entryPart

Contained by

core: cit

dictionaries: dictScrap entry entryFree

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: cb cit gap gb index lb milestone note pb

dictionaries: def dictScrap etym form gramGrp re sense usg xr

figures: figure notatedMusic

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

transcr: addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

Declaration

```
element hom  
{
```



```
att.global.attributes,  
att.lexicographic.attributes,  
( sense | model.entryPart.top | model.global )*  
}
```

Example

```
<entry>  
  <form>  
    <orth>bray</orth>  
    <pron>breI</pron>  
  </form>  
  <hom>  
    <gramGrp>  
      <pos>n</pos>  
    </gramGrp>  
    <def>cry of an ass; sound of a trumpet.</def>  
  </hom>  
  <hom>  
    <gramGrp>  
      <pos>vt</pos>  
      <subc>VP2A</subc>  
    </gramGrp>  
    <def>make a cry or sound of this kind.</def>  
  </hom>  
</entry>
```

<hyph> (hyphenation) contains a hyphenated form of a dictionary headword, or hyphenation information in some other form. [9.3.1.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))

Member of model.entryPart model.formPart

Contained by

core: cit

dictionaries: dictScrap entryFree form

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element hyph
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}
```

Example

```
<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>competitor</orth>
    <hyph>com|peti|tor</hyph>
    <pron>k@m"petit@(r)</pron>
  </form>
</entry>
```

<hyphenation> summarizes the way in which hyphenation in a source text has been treated in an encoded version of it. [2.3.3. 15.3.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.declarable (@default)

@eol (end-of-line) indicates whether or not end-of-line hyphenation has been retained in a text.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Legal values are: **all** all end-of-line hyphenation has been retained, even though the lineation of the original may not have been.

some end-of-line hyphenation has been retained in some cases.
[Default]

hard all soft end-of-line hyphenation has been removed: any remaining end-of-line hyphenation should be retained.

none all end-of-line hyphenation has been removed: any remaining hyphenation occurred within the line.

Member of model.editorialDeclPart

Contained by

header: editorialDecl

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

Declaration

```
element hyphenation
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
```

```

    attribute eol { "all" | "some" | "hard" | "none" }?,
    model.pLike+
}

```

Example

```

<hyphenation eol="some">
  <p>End-of-line hyphenation silently removed where appropriate</p>
</hyphenation>

```

<iType> (inflectional class) indicates the inflectional class associated with a lexical item.

[9.3.1.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))

@type indicates the type of indicator used to specify the inflection class, when it is necessary to distinguish between the usual abbreviated indications (e.g. *inv*) and other kinds of indicators, such as special codes referring to conjugation patterns, etc.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Sample values include: **abbrev** abbreviated indicator

verbTable coded reference to a table of verbs

Note This element is synonymous with <gram type='inflectional type'>.

Member of model.morphLike

Contained by

dictionaries: dictScrap entryFree etym form gramGrp

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element iType
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.paraContent}
```

Example

```
<form>
  <orth>horrifier</orth>
  <pron>ORifje</pron>
  <iType type="vhtable">7</iType>
</form>
```

Note May contain character data and phrase-level elements. Typical content will be *invariant*, *n 3* etc.

<idno> (identifier) supplies any form of identifier used to identify some object, such as a bibliographic item, a person, a title, an organization, etc. in a standardized way. [2.2.4. 2.2.5. 3.11.2.3.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.sortable (@sortKey)

@type categorizes the identifier, for example as an ISBN, Social Security number, etc.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Member of model.nameLike model.personPart model.publicationStmtPart

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s span

core: abbr add addrLine address analytic author bibl biblScope biblStruct citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned monogr name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyp h iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote idno language licence principal publicationStmt rendition seriesStmt sponsor tagUsage

iso-fs: fDescr fsDescr

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

May contain

gaiji: g

header: idno

Declaration

```
element idno
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  ( text | model.gLike | idno )*
}
```

Example

```
<idno type="ISBN">978-1-906964-22-1</idno>
<idno type="ISSN">0143-3385</idno>
<idno type="DOI">http://dx.doi.org/10.1000/123</idno>
<idno type="URL">http://authority.nzetc.org/463</idno>
<idno type="LT">Thomason Tract E.537(17)</idno>
<idno type="Wing">C695</idno>
<idno type="oldCat">
  <g ref="#sym"/>345
</idno>
```

In the last case, the identifier includes a non-Unicode character which is defined elsewhere by means of a <glyph> or <char> element referenced here as #sym.

Note <idno> should be used for labels which identify an object or concept in a formal cataloguing system such as a database or an RDF store, or in a distributed system such as the World Wide Web.

<if> defines a conditional default value for a feature; the condition is specified as a feature structure, and is met if it subsumes the feature structure in the text for which a default value is sought. [18.11.]

Module iso-fs

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of

Contained by

iso-fs: vDefault

May contain

iso-fs: binary default f fs numeric string symbol then vAlt vColl vLabel vMerge vNot

Declaration

```
element if
{
  att.global.attributes,
```

```
( ( fs | f ), then, ( model.featureVal ) )  
}
```

Example

```
<vDefault>  
  <if>  
    <fs>  
      <f name="VFORM">  
        <symbol value="INF"/>  
      </f>  
      <f name="SUBJ">  
        <binary value="true"/>  
      </f>  
    </fs>  
  </if>  
  <symbol value="for"/>  
</vDefault>
```

Note May contain a feature structure, followed by a feature value; the two are separated by a `<then>` element.

<iff/> (if and only if) separates the condition from the consequence in a bicond element.
[18.11.]

Module iso-fs

Attributes Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@rend`, `@style`, `@rendition`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.links` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) (`att.global.change` (`@change`))

Member of

Contained by

iso-fs: bicond

May contain Empty element

Declaration `element iff { att.global.attributes, empty }`

Example

```
<bicond>  
  <fs>  
    <f name="F00">  
      <symbol value="42"/>  
    </f>  
  </fs>  
<iff/>  
  <fs>  
    <f name="BAR">  
      <binary value="true"/>  
    </f>  
  </fs>  
</bicond>
```

Note This element is provided primarily to enhance the human readability of the feature-system declaration.

<imprimatur> contains a formal statement authorizing the publication of a work, sometimes required to appear on a title page or its verso. [4.6.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.titlepagePart

Contained by

textstructure: titlePage

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element imprimatur { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

Example

```
<imprimatur>Licensed and entred acording to Order.</imprimatur>
```

<imprint> groups information relating to the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item. [3.11.2.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of

Contained by

core: monogr

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: biblScope cb date gap gb index lb milestone note pb pubPlace publisher respStmt time

1 ELEMENTS

figures: figure notatedMusic

header: catRef classCode distributor

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

transcr: addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

Declaration

```
element imprint
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( classCode, catRef )*,
  ( ( ( model.imprintPart ) | ( model.dateLike ) ), respStmt*, model.global* )+
}
```

Example

```
<imprint>
  <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
  <publisher>Clarendon Press</publisher>
  <date>1987</date>
</imprint>
```

<index> (index entry) marks a location to be indexed for whatever purpose. [3.8.2.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.spanning (@spanTo)

@indexName a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name>), supplying a name to specify which index (of several) the index entry belongs to.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.name`

Values an application-specific name, consisting of Unicode characters only.

Note This attribute makes it possible to create multiple indexes for a text.

Member of model.global.meta

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint index item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote
language licence principal sponsor

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate
docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur
opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface
surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain

core: index term

Declaration

```
element index
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  attribute indexName { data.name }?,
  ( term, index? )*
}
```

Example

```
David's other principal backer, Josiah ha-Kohen
<index indexName="NAMES">
  <term>Josiah ha-Kohen b. Azarya</term>
</index> b. Azarya, son of one of the last gaons of Sura
<index indexName="PLACES">
  <term>Sura</term>
</index> was David's own first cousin.
```

<interaction> describes the extent, cardinality and nature of any interaction among those producing and experiencing the text, for example in the form of response or interjection, commentary, etc. [15.2.1.]

Module corpus

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

@type specifies the degree of interaction between active and passive participants in the text.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Legal values are: **none** no interaction of any kind, e.g. a monologue

partial some degree of interaction, e.g. a monologue with set responses

complete complete interaction, e.g. a face to face conversation

inapplicable this parameter is inappropriate or inapplicable in this case

@active specifies the number of active participants (or *addressors*) producing parts of the text.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Suggested values include: **singular** a single addressor

plural many addressors

corporate a corporate addressor

unknown number of addressors unknown or unspecifiable

@passive specifies the number of passive participants (or *addressees*) to whom a text is directed or in whose presence it is created or performed.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Suggested values include: **self** text is addressed to the originator e.g. a diary

single text is addressed to one other person e.g. a personal letter

many text is addressed to a countable number of others e.g. a conversation in which all participants are identified

group text is addressed to an undefined but fixed number of participants e.g. a lecture

world text is addressed to an undefined and indeterminately large number e.g. a published book

Member of model.textDescPart

Contained by

corpus: textDesc

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

dictionaries: lang

figures: figure notatedMusic

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

transcr: addSpan am damageSpan delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst substJoin

Declaration

```

element interaction
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { "none" | "partial" | "complete" | "inapplicable" }?,
  attribute active
  {
    "singular" | "plural" | "corporate" | "unknown" | xsd:Name
  }?,
  attribute passive
  {
    "self" | "single" | "many" | "group" | "world" | xsd:Name
  }?,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}

```

Example

```
<interaction active="plural" passive="many" type="complete"/>
```

Example

```
<interaction active="singular" passive="group" type="none"/>
```

<interp> (interpretation) summarizes a specific interpretative annotation which can be linked to a span of text. [17.3.]

Module analysis

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.interpLike (@type, @inst) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

Member of model.global.meta

Contained by

analysis: cl interpGrp m phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal sponsor

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain

core: desc

gaiji: g

Declaration

```
element interp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.interpLike.attributes,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.descLike | model.certLike )*
}
```

Example

```
<interp type="structuralunit" xml:id="ana_am">aftermath</interp>
```

Note Generally, each <interp> element carries an xml:id attribute. This permits the encoder to explicitly associate the interpretation represented by the content of an <interp> with any textual element through its ana attribute. Alternatively (or, in addition) an <interp> may carry an inst attribute which points to one or more textual elements to which the analysis represented by the content of the <interp> applies.

<interpGrp> (interpretation group) collects together a set of related interpretations which share responsibility or type. [17.3.]

Module analysis

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.interpLike (@type, @inst) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

Member of model.global.meta

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal sponsor

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain

analysis: interp

core: desc

Declaration

```
element interpGrp
{
  att.global.attributes,
```

```
att.interpLike.attributes,  
( model.descLike*, interp+ )  
}
```

Example

```
<interpGrp resp="#TMA" type="structuralunit">  
  <desc>basic structural organization</desc>  
  <interp xml:id="I1">introduction</interp>  
  <interp xml:id="I2">conflict</interp>  
  <interp xml:id="I3">climax</interp>  
  <interp xml:id="I4">revenge</interp>  
  <interp xml:id="I5">reconciliation</interp>  
  <interp xml:id="I6">aftermath</interp>  
</interpGrp>  
<bibl xml:id="TMA"/>
```

Note Any number of <interp> elements.

<interpretation> describes the scope of any analytic or interpretive information added to the text in addition to the transcription. [2.3.3.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.declarable (@default)

Member of model.editorialDeclPart

Contained by

header: editorialDecl

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

Declaration

```
element interpretation  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  att.declarable.attributes,  
  model.pLike+  
}
```

Example

```
<interpretation>  
  <p>The part of speech analysis applied throughout section 4 was added by  
  hand and has not  
  been checked</p>  
</interpretation>
```

<item> contains one component of a list. [3.7. 2.5.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) att.sortable (*@sortKey*)

Member of

Contained by

core: list

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element item
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

Example

```
<list type="ordered">
  <head>Here begin the chapter headings of Book IV</head>
  <item n="4.1">The death of Queen Clotild.</item>
  <item n="4.2">How King Lothar wanted to appropriate one third of the
Church revenues.</item>
  <item n="4.3">The wives and children of Lothar.</item>
  <item n="4.4">The Counts of the Bretons.</item>
  <item n="4.5">Saint Gall the Bishop.</item>
  <item n="4.6">The priest Cato.</item>
  <item> ...</item>
</list>

```

Note May contain simple prose or a sequence of chunks. Whatever string of characters is used to label a list item in the copy text may be used as the value of the global *n* attribute, but it is not required that numbering be recorded explicitly. In ordered lists, the *n* attribute on the `<item>` element is by definition synonymous with the use of the `<label>` element to record the enumerator of the list item. In glossary lists, however, the term being defined should be given with the `<label>` element, not *n*.

<join> identifies a possibly fragmented segment of text, by pointing at the possibly discontinuous elements which compose it. [16.7.]

Module linking

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

@targets specifies the identifiers of the elements or passages to be joined into a virtual element.

Status Optional

Datatype 2-∞ occurrences of data.pointer separated by whitespace

Values two or more pointers (URIs), separated by whitespace

Note This attribute is deprecated. It is retained for backward compatibility only; the attribute target should be used for preference. It is an error to supply both attributes, but one or the other must be present.

@result specifies the name of an element which this aggregation may be understood to represent.

Status Optional

Datatype data.name

Values The generic identifier of an element in the current schema.

@scope indicates whether the targets to be joined include the entire element indicated (the entire subtree including its root), or just the children of the target (the branches of the subtree).

Status Recommended

Datatype data.enumerated

Legal values are: root the rooted subtrees indicated by the targets attribute are joined, each subtree become a child of the virtual element created by the join[Default]

branches the children of the subtrees indicated by the targets attribute become the children of the virtual element (i.e. the roots of the subtrees are discarded)

Member of model.global.meta

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xt

figures: cell figure table

1 ELEMENTS

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote
language licence principal sponsor

linking: ab joinGrp seg

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate
docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur
opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface
surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain

core: desc

Declaration

```
element join
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute targets { list { data.pointer, data.pointer, data.pointer* } }?,
  attribute result { data.name }?,
  attribute scope { "root" | "branches" }?,
  ( model.descLike | model.certLike )*
}
```

Schematron <s:report test="@target and @targets">You may not supply both @target and @targets on <s:name/> </s:report>

Schematron <s:report test="not(@target) and not(@targets)">You must supply either @target or @targets on <s:name/> </s:report>

Schematron <s:assert test="contains(@target, ' ')">You must supply at least two values for @target on <s:name/> </s:assert>

Example The following example is discussed in section SAAG:

```
<sp>
  <speaker>Hughie</speaker>
  <p>How does it go? <q>
    <l xml:id="frog_x1">da-da-da</l>
    <l xml:id="frog_l2">gets a new frog</l>
    <l>...</l>
  </q>
</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>Louie</speaker>
  <p>
    <q>
      <l xml:id="frog_l1">When the old pond</l>
      <l>...</l>
    </q>
  </p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>Dewey</speaker>
  <p>
    <q>... <l xml:id="frog_l3">It's a new pond.</l>
  </q>
  </p>
  <join result="lg" scope="root" target="#frog_l1 #frog_l2 #frog_l3"/>
</sp>
```


The `<join>` element here identifies a linegroup (`<lg>`) comprising the three lines indicated by the target attribute. The value `root` for the scope attribute indicates that the resulting virtual element contains the three `<l>` elements linked to at `#frog_l1 #frog_l2 #frog_l3`, rather than their character data content.

Example In this example, the attribute scope is specified with the value of `branches` to indicate that the virtual list being constructed is to be made by taking the lists indicated by the target attribute of the `<join>` element, discarding the `<list>` tags which enclose them, and combining the items contained within the lists into a single virtual list:

```
<p>Southern dialect (my own variety, at least) has only <list xml:id="LP1">
  <item>
    <s>I done gone</s>
  </item>
  <item>
    <s>I done went</s>
  </item>
</list> whereas Negro Non-Standard basilect has both these and
<list xml:id="LP2">
  <item>
    <s>I done go</s>
  </item>
</list>.</p>
<p>White Southern dialect also has <list xml:id="LP3">
  <item>
    <s>I've done gone</s>
  </item>
  <item>
    <s>I've done went</s>
  </item>
</list> which, when they occur in Negro dialect, should probably be
considered as borrowings from other varieties of English.</p>
<join
  result="list"
  scope="branches"
  target="#LP1 #LP2 #LP3"
  xml:id="LST1">
  <desc>Sample sentences in Southern speech</desc>
</join>
```

<joinGrp> (join group) groups a collection of join elements and possibly pointers. [16.7.]

Module linking

Attributes Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@rend`, `@style`, `@rendition`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) (`att.global.change` (`@change`)) `att.pointing.group` (`@domains`, `@targFunc`) (`att.pointing` (`@targetLang`, `@target`, `@evaluate`)) (`att.typed` (`@type`, `@subtype`))

@result describes the result of the joins gathered in this collection.

Status Optional

Datatype data.name

Values supplies the default value for the result on each `<join>` included within the group.

Member of model.global.meta

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal sponsor

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain

core: gloss ptr

linking: join

Declaration

```
element joinGrp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.group.attributes,
  attribute result { data.name }?,
  ( model.glossLike*, ( join | ptr )+ )
}
```

Example

```
<joinGrp domains="#zuitxt1 #zuitxt2 #zuitxt3" result="q">
  <join target="#zuiq1 #zuiq2 #zuiq6"/>
  <join target="#zuiq3 #zuiq4 #zuiq5"/>
</joinGrp>
```

Note Any number of <join> or <ptr> elements.

<keywords> contains a list of keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text. [2.4.3.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

@scheme identifies the controlled vocabulary within which the set of keywords concerned is defined.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.pointer`

Values may point to a local definition, for example in a <taxonomy> element, or more usually to some external location where the scheme is fully defined.

Member of `Confined by`

header: textClass

May contain

core: list term

Declaration

```

element keywords
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute scheme { data.pointer }?,
  ( term+ | list )
}

```

Example

```

<keywords scheme="http://classificationweb.net">
  <term>Babbage, Charles</term>
  <term>Mathematicians - Great Britain - Biography</term>
</keywords>

```

Example

```

<keywords>
  <term>Fermented beverages</term>
  <term>Central Andes</term>
  <term>Schinus molle</term>
  <term>Molle beer</term>
  <term>Indigenous peoples</term>
  <term>Ethnography</term>
  <term>Archaeology</term>
</keywords>

```

Note Each individual keyword (including compound subject headings) should be supplied as a <term> element directly within the <keywords> element. An alternative usage, in which each <term> appears within a <item> inside a <list> is permitted for backwards compatibility, but is deprecated. If no control list exists for the keywords used, then no value should be supplied for the scheme attribute.

<I> (verse line) contains a single, possibly incomplete, line of verse. [3.12.1. 3.12. 7.2.5.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.fragmentable (@part)

Member of model.ILike

Contained by

core: head item lg note q quote said sp stage

figures: figure

header: change handNote licence

textstructure: argument body div epigraph postscript

transcr: metamark

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```

element l
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.fragmentable.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```
<l met="-/-/-/-/-/" part="Y"/>
```

<label> contains any label or heading used to identify part of a text, typically but not exclusively in a list or glossary. [3.7.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.placement (*@place*)

Member of model.labelLike

Contained by

core: add corr del desc emph head hi item l lg list meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic stage title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figDesc figure notatedMusic

header: application change handNote licence rendition tagUsage

iso-fs: fDescr fsDescr

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript signed titlePart

transcr: damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surface surplus

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```

element label
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example Labels are commonly used for the headwords in glossary lists; note the use of the global `xml:lang` attribute to set the default language of the glossary list to Middle English, and identify the glosses and headings as modern English or Latin:

```

<list type="gloss" xml:lang="enm">
  <head xml:lang="en">Vocabulary</head>
  <headLabel xml:lang="en">Middle English</headLabel>
  <headItem xml:lang="en">New English</headItem>
  <label>nu</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">now</item>
  <label>lhude</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">loudly</item>
  <label>bloweth</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">blooms</item>
  <label>med</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">meadow</item>
  <label>wude</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">wood</item>
  <label>awe</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">ewe</item>
  <label>lhouth</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">lows</item>
  <label>sterteth</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">bounds, frisks (cf. <cit>
    <ref>Chaucer, K.T.644</ref>
    <quote>a courser, <term>sterting</term>as the fyr</quote>
  </cit>
  </item>
  <label>verteth</label>
  <item xml:lang="la">pedit</item>

```

```
<label>murie</label>
<item xml:lang="en">merrily</item>
<label>swik</label>
<item xml:lang="en">cease</item>
<label>naver</label>
<item xml:lang="en">never</item>
</list>
```

Example Labels may also be used to record explicitly the numbers or letters which mark list items in ordered lists, as in this extract from Gibbon's *Autobiography*. In this usage the <label> element is synonymous with the n attribute on the <item> element:

```
I will add two facts, which have seldom occurred
in the composition of six, or at least of five quartos.
<list rend="runon" type="ordered">
  <label>(1)</label>
  <item>My first rough manuscript, without any intermediate copy, has been
sent to the press.</item>
  <label>(2) </label>
  <item>Not a sheet has been seen by any human eyes, excepting those of the
author and the
  printer: the faults and the merits are exclusively my own.</item>
</list>
```

Example Labels may also be used for other structured list items, as in this extract from the journal of Edward Gibbon:

```
<list type="gloss">
  <label>March 1757.</label>
  <item>I wrote some critical observations upon Plautus.</item>
  <label>March 8th.</label>
  <item>I wrote a long dissertation upon some lines of Virgil.</item>
  <label>June.</label>
  <item>I saw Mademoiselle Curchod – <quote xml:lang="la">Omnia vincit amor,
et nos cedamus
  amori.</quote>
  </item>
  <label>August.</label>
  <item>I went to Crassy, and staid two days.</item>
</list>
```

Note that the <label> might also appear within the <item> rather than as its sibling. Though syntactically valid, this usage is not recommended TEI practice.

Example Labels may also be used to represent a label or heading attached to a paragraph or sequence of paragraphs not treated as a structural division, or to a group of verse lines. Note that, in this case, the <label> element appears *within* the <p> or <lg> element, rather than as a preceding sibling of it.

```
<p>[...]  
<lb/>& n'entrer en mauuais & mal-heu-  
<lb/>r  mefnage. Or des que le confente-  
<lb/>ment des parties y eft le mariage eft  
<lb/> arreft , quoy que de faict il ne foit  
<label place="margin">Puiffance maritale  
entre les Romains.</label>  
<lb/> conformm . Depuis la conformma-  
<lb/>tion du mariage la femme eft foub-  
<lb/> la puiffance du mary, s'il n'eft efcla-  
<lb/>ue ou enfant de famille : car en ce  
<lb/> cas, la femme, qui a efpouf  vn en-
```

```
<lb/>fant de famille, eft fous la puiffance
[...]</p>
<p>In this example the text of the label appears in the right hand
margin of the original source, next to the paragraph it describes, but
approximately in the middle of it.
</p>
<p>If so desired the <gi>type</gi> attribute may be used to
distinguish different categories of label.</p>
```

<lang> (language name) contains the name of a language mentioned in etymological or other linguistic discussion. [9.3.4.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))

Member of model.nameLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s span

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage

iso-fs: fDescr fsDescr

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

1 ELEMENTS

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element lang
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```
<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>publish</orth> ... </form>
  <etym>
    <lang>ME.</lang>
    <mentioned>publisshen</mentioned>,
  <lang>F.</lang>
    <mentioned>publier</mentioned>, <lang>L.</lang>
    <mentioned>publicare,
      publicatum</mentioned>. <xr>See <ref>public</ref>; cf. <ref>2d
    -ish</ref>.</xr>
  </etym>
</entry>

```

Note May contain character data mixed with phrase-level elements.

<langUsage> (language usage) describes the languages, sublanguages, registers, dialects, etc. represented within a text. [2.4.2. 2.4. 15.3.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.declarable (@default)

Member of model.profileDescPart

Contained by

header: profileDesc

May contain

header: language

Declaration

```
element langUsage
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  language+
}

```

Example


```
<LangUsage>
  <language ident="fr-CA" usage="60">Québécois</language>
  <language ident="en-CA" usage="20">Canadian business English</language>
  <language ident="en-GB" usage="20">British English</language>
</LangUsage>
```

<language> characterizes a single language or sublanguage used within a text. [2.4.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

@ident (identifier) Supplies a language code constructed as defined in BCP 47 which is used to identify the language documented by this element, and which is referenced by the global xml:lang attribute.

Status Required

Datatype data.language

@usage specifies the approximate percentage (by volume) of the text which uses this language.

Status Optional

Datatype

xsd:nonNegativeInteger { maxInclusive = "100" }

Members contained by

header: langUsage

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

dictionaries: lang

figures: figure notatedMusic

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

transcr: addSpan am damageSpan delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst substJoin

Declaration

```
element language
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute ident { data.language },
  attribute usage { xsd:nonNegativeInteger { maxInclusive = "100" } }?,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}

```

Example

```

<LangUsage xml:lang="en-US">
  <Language ident="en-US" usage="75">modern American English</Language>
  <Language ident="i-az-Arab" usage="20">Azerbaijani in Arabic
script</Language>
  <Language ident="x-lap" usage="05">Pig Latin</Language>
</LangUsage>

```

Note Particularly for sublanguages, an informal prose characterization should be supplied as content for the element.

<lb/> (line break) marks the start of a new (typographic) line in some edition or version of a text. [3.10.3. 7.2.5.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.edition (*@ed*, *@edRef*) att.spanning (*@spanTo*) att.breaking (*@break*)

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list listBibl measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal sponsor

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc subst supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```

element lb
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.edition.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  att.breaking.attributes,

```

```
} empty
```

Example This example shows typographical line breaks within metrical lines, where they occur at different places in different editions:

```
<l>Of Mans First Disobedience,<lb ed="1674"/> and<lb ed="1667"/> the  
Fruit</l>  
<l>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose<lb ed="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</l>  
<l>Brought Death into the World,<lb ed="1667"/> and all<lb ed="1674"/> our  
woe,</l>
```

Example This example encodes typographical line breaks as a means of preserving the visual appearance of a title page. The break attribute is used to show that the line break does not (as elsewhere) mark the start of a new word.

```
<titlePart rend="italic">  
<lb/>L'auteur susdict supplie les Lecteurs  
<lb/>benevoles, soy reserver à rire au  
soi-<lb break="no"/>xante & dixhuytiesme livre.  
</titlePart>
```

Note By convention, <lb> elements should appear at the point in the text where a new line starts. The n attribute, if used, indicates the number or other value associated with the text between this point and the next <lb> element, typically the sequence number of the line within the page, or other appropriate unit. This element is intended to be used for marking actual line breaks on a manuscript or printed page, at the point where they occur; it should not be used to tag structural units such as lines of verse (for which the <l> element is available) except in circumstances where structural units cannot otherwise be marked. The type attribute may be used to characterize the line break in any respect. The more specialized attributes break, ed, or edRef should be preferred when the intent is to indicate whether or not the line break is word-breaking, or to note the source from which it derives.

<lbl> (label) contains a label for a form, example, translation, or other piece of information, e.g. abbreviation for, contraction of, literally, approximately, synonyms:, etc. [9.3.1. 9.3.3.2. 9.3.5.3.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))

@type classifies the label using any convenient typology.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Member of model.entryPart model.gramPart

Contained by

core: cit

dictionaries: dictScrap entryFree etym form gramGrp xr

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w
core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr
q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear
dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar
figures: figure formula notatedMusic table
gaiji: g
header: biblFull idno
iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib
linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline
textstructure: floatingText
transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo
Declaration

```
element lbl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.paraContent}
```

Example

```
<entry>
  <form type="abbrev">
    <orth>MTBF</orth>
  </form>
  <form type="full">
    <lbl>abbrev. for</lbl>
    <orth>mean time between failures</orth>
  </form>
</entry>
```

Note Labels specifically relating to usage should be tagged with the special-purpose `<usg>` element rather than with the generic `<lbl>` element.

<lg> (line group) contains one or more verse lines functioning as a formal unit, e.g. a stanza, refrain, verse paragraph, etc. [3.12.1. 3.12. 7.2.5.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) att.divLike (*@org*, *@sample*) (att.fragmentable (*@part*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.declaring (*@decls*)

Member of macro.paraContent model.divPart

Contained by

core: add corr del emph head hi item l lg note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def gen gram hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos
pron stress subc syll tns usg

figures: cell figure

header: change handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript signed
titlePart

transcr: damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: cb desc gap gb head index l label lb lg meeting milestone note pb stage

figures: figure notatedMusic

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph opener
postscript salute signed trailer

transcr: addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

Declaration

```
element lg
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.divLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    ( model.lLike | model.stagelike | model.labelLike | lg ),
    ( model.lLike | model.stagelike | model.labelLike | model.global | lg )*,
    ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
  )
}
```

Schematron <sch:assert

test="count(descendant::tei:lg|descendant::tei:l|descendant::tei:gap) > 0">An lg
element must contain at least one child l, lg or gap element.</sch:assert>

Example

```
<lg type="free">
  <l>Let me be my own fool</l>
  <l>of my own making, the sum of it</l>
</lg>
<lg type="free">
  <l>is equivocal.</l>
  <l>One says of the drunken farmer:</l>
</lg>
<lg type="free">
  <l>leave him lay off it. And this is</l>
  <l>the explanation.</l>
</lg>
```

Note contains verse lines or nested line groups only, possibly prefixed by a heading.

<licence> contains information about a licence or other legal agreement applicable to the text. [2.2.4.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.dateable (@calendar, @period) (att.dateable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))

Member of model.availabilityPart

Contained by

header: availability

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element licence
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.dateable.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

Example

```
<licence
  target="http://www.nzetc.org/tm/scholarly/tei-NZETC-
  Help.html#licensing"> Licence: Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 3.0
  New Zealand Licence
</licence>

```

Example

```
<availability>
  <licence
    notBefore="2013-01-01"
    target="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0/">
  <p>The Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 Unported (CC BY 3.0) Licence
    applies to this document.</p>
  <p>The licence was added on January 1, 2013.</p>

```

```
</licence>
</availability>
```

Note A <licence> element should be supplied for each licence agreement applicable to the text in question. The target attribute may be used to reference a full version of the licence. The when, notBefore, notAfter, from or to attributes may be used in combination to indicate the date or dates of applicability of the licence.

<line> contains the transcription of a topographic line in the source document

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.coordinated (@start, @ulx, @uly, @lrx, @lry)

Member of model.linePart

Contained by

transcr: line surface zone

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: add cb choice corr del gap gb hi index lb milestone note orig pb reg sic unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

transcr: addSpan damage damageSpan delSpan fw handShift line listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space substJoin supplied surplus undo zone

Declaration

```
element line
{
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.coordinated.attributes,
  ( text | model.global | model.linePart ) *
}
```

Example

```
<surface>
  <zone>
    <line>Poem</line>
    <line>As in Visions of – at</line>
    <line>night –</line>
    <line>All sorts of fancies running through</line>
    <line>the head</line>
  </zone>
</surface>
```

Example

```
<surface>
  <zone>
```

```
<line>Hope you enjoyed</line>
<line>Wales, as they
  said</line>
<line>to Mrs FitzHerbert</line>
<line>Mama</line>
</zone>
<zone>
  <line>Printed in England</line>
</zone>
</surface>
```

Note This element should be used only to mark up writing which is topographically organized as a series of lines, horizontal or vertical. It should not be used to mark lines of verse (for which use <l>) nor to mark linebreaks within text which has been encoded using structural elements such as <p> (for which use <lb>).

<link/> defines an association or hypertextual link among elements or passages, of some type not more precisely specifiable by other elements. [16.1.]

Module linking

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

@targets specifies the identifiers of the elements or passages to be linked or associated.

Status Optional

Datatype 2–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Values two or more pointers (URIs), separated by whitespace

Note This attribute is deprecated. It is retained for backward compatibility only; the attribute target should be used for preference. It is an error to supply both attributes, but one or the other must be present.

Member of model.global.meta

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xt

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote
language licence principal sponsor

linking: ab linkGrp seg

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate
docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur
opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface
surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element link
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute targets { list { data.pointer, data.pointer, data.pointer* } }?,
  empty
}
```

Schematron <sch:report test="@target and @targets">You may not supply both @target and @targets on <sch:name/> </sch:report>

Schematron <sch:report test="not(@target) and not(@targets)">You must supply either @target or @targets on <sch:name/> </sch:report>

Schematron <sch:assert test="contains(@target, ' ')">You must supply at least two values for @target on <sch:name/> </sch:assert>

Example

```
<s n="1">The state Supreme Court has refused to release <rs xml:id="R1">
  <rs xml:id="R2">Rahway State Prison</rs> inmate</rs>
  <rs xml:id="R3">James Scott</rs> on bail.</s>
<s n="2">
  <rs xml:id="R4">The fighter</rs> is serving 30-40 years
  for a 1975 armed robbery conviction in <rs xml:id="R5">the
  penitentiary</rs>.
</s>
<linkGrp type="periphrasis">
  <link target="#R1 #R3 #R4"/>
  <link target="#R2 #R5"/>
</linkGrp>
```

Note This element should only be used to encode associations not otherwise provided for by more specific elements. The location of this element within a document has no significance, unless it is included within a <linkGrp>, in which case it may inherit the value of the type attribute from the value given on the <linkGrp>.

<linkGrp> (link group) defines a collection of associations or hypertextual links. [16.1.]

Module linking

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.pointing.group (@domains, @targFunc) (att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate)) (att.typed (@type, @subtype))

1 ELEMENTS

Member of model.global.meta

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal sponsor

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain

core: ptr

linking: link

Declaration

```
element linkGrp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.group.attributes,
  ( link | ptr )+
}
```

Example

```
<linkGrp type="translation">
  <link target="#CCS1 #SW1"/>
  <link target="#CCS2 #SW2"/>
  <link target="#CCS #SW"/>
</linkGrp>
<div type="volume" xml:id="CCS" xml:lang="fr">
  <p>
    <s xml:id="CCS1">Longtemps, je me suis couché de bonne heure.</s>
    <s xml:id="CCS2">Parfois, à peine ma bougie éteinte, mes yeux se
fermaient si vite que je n'avais pas le temps de me dire : "Je
m'endors."</s>
  </p>
</div>
<div type="volume" xml:id="SW" xml:lang="en">
  <p>
    <s xml:id="SW1">For a long time I used to go to bed early.</s>
    <s xml:id="SW2">Sometimes, when I had put out my candle, my eyes would
close so quickly that I had not even time to say "I'm going to sleep."</s>
  </p>
</div>
```

</p>
</div>

Note May contain one or more <link> elements only, optionally with interspersed pointer elements. A web or link group is an administrative convenience, which should be used to collect a set of links together for any purpose, not simply to supply a default value for the type attribute.

<list> (list) contains any sequence of items organized as a list. [3.7.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.sortable (@sortKey)

@type describes the form of the list.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Suggested values include: **ordered** list items are numbered or lettered.

bulleted list items are marked with a bullet or other typographic device.

simple list items are not numbered or bulleted. [Default]

gloss each list item glosses some term or concept, which is given by a label element preceding the list item.

Note The formal syntax of the element declarations allows <label> tags to be omitted from lists tagged <list type="gloss">; this is however a semantic error.

Member of model.listLike

Contained by

core: add corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyp h iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote keywords licence rendition revisionDesc sourceDesc tagUsage

iso-fs: fDescr fsDescr

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript signed titlePart

transcr: damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: cb gap gb head headItem headLabel index item label lb meeting milestone note pb

figures: figure notatedMusic

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

1 ELEMENTS

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph opener
postscript salute signed trailer

transcr: addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

Declaration

```
element list
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  attribute type { "ordered" | "bulleted" | "simple" | "gloss" | xsd:Name }?,
  (
    ( ( model.divTop ) | ( model.global ) )*,
    (
      ( item, model.global* )+
      | (
          headLabel?,
          headItem?,
          ( label, model.global*, item, model.global* )+
        )
    ),
    ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
  )
}
```

Example

```
<list type="ordered">
  <item>a butcher</item>
  <item>a baker</item>
  <item>a candlestick maker, with <list type="bullets">
    <item>rings on his fingers</item>
    <item>bells on his toes</item>
  </list>
</item>
</list>
```

Example The following example treats the short numbered clauses of Anglo-Saxon legal codes as lists of items. The text is from an ordinance of King Athelstan (924–939):

```
<div1 type="section">
  <head>Athelstan's Ordinance</head>
  <list type="ordered">
    <item n="1">Concerning thieves. First, that no thief is to be spared who
is caught with
      the stolen goods, [if he is] over twelve years and [if the value of
the goods is] over
      eightpence. <list type="ordered">
        <item n="1.1">And if anyone does spare one, he is to pay for the thief
with his
          wergild – and the thief is to be no nearer a settlement on that
account – or to
          clear himself by an oath of that amount.</item>
        <item n="1.2">If, however, he [the thief] wishes to defend himself or
to escape, he is
          not to be spared [whether younger or older than twelve].</item>
        <item n="1.3">If a thief is put into prison, he is to be in prison 40
days, and he may
          then be redeemed with 120 shillings; and the kindred are to stand
surety for him
          that he will desist for ever.</item>
        <item n="1.4">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him with
```

```
his wergild,  
    or to bring him back there.</item>  
    <item n="1.5">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him with  
his wergild,  
    whether to the king or to him to whom it rightly belongs; and  
everyone of those who  
    supported him is to pay 120 shillings to the king as a  
fine.</item>  
    </list>  
    </item>  
    <item n="2">Concerning lordless men. And we pronounced about these  
lordless men, from whom  
    no justice can be obtained, that one should order their kindred to  
fetch back such a  
    person to justice and to find him a lord in public meeting.  
<list type="ordered">  
    <item n="2.1">And if they then will not, or cannot, produce him on that  
appointed day,  
    he is then to be a fugitive afterwards, and he who encounters him  
is to strike him  
    down as a thief.</item>  
    <item n="2.2">And he who harbours him after that, is to pay for him  
with his wergild  
    or to clear himself by an oath of that amount.</item>  
    </list>  
    </item>  
    <item n="3">Concerning the refusal of justice. The lord who refuses  
justice and upholds  
    his guilty man, so that the king is appealed to, is to repay the value  
of the goods and  
    120 shillings to the king; and he who appeals to the king before he  
demands justice as  
    often as he ought, is to pay the same fine as the other would have  
done, if he had  
    refused him justice. <list type="ordered">  
    <item n="3.1">And the lord who is an accessory to a theft by his slave,  
and it becomes  
    known about him, is to forfeit the slave and be liable to his  
wergild on the first  
    occasionp if he does it more often, he is to be liable to pay all  
that he owns.</item>  
    <item n="3.2">And likewise any of the king's treasurers or of our  
reeves, who has been  
    an accessory of thieves who have committed theft, is to liable to  
the same.</item>  
    </list>  
    </item>  
    <item n="4">Concerning treachery to a lord. And we have pronounced  
concerning treachery to  
    a lord, that he [who is accused] is to forfeit his life if he cannot  
deny it or is  
    afterwards convicted at the three-fold ordeal.</item>  
    </list>  
</div1>
```

Note that nested lists have been used so the tagging mirrors the structure indicated by the two-level numbering of the clauses. The clauses could have been treated as a one-level list with irregular numbering, if desired.

Example

```

<p>These decrees, most blessed Pope Hadrian, we propounded in the public
council ... and they
confirmed them in our hand in your stead with the sign of the Holy Cross,
and afterwards
inscribed with a careful pen on the paper of this page, affixing thus the
sign of the Holy
Cross. <list type="simple">
  <item>I, Eanbald, by the grace of God archbishop of the holy church of
York, have
  subscribed to the pious and catholic validity of this document with
the sign of the Holy
  Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Ælfwold, king of the people across the Humber, consenting have
subscribed with
  the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Tilberht, prelate of the church of Hexham, rejoicing have
subscribed with the
  sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Higbald, bishop of the church of Lindisfarne, obeying have
subscribed with the
  sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Ethelbert, bishop of Candida Casa, suppliant, have subscribed
with the sign of
  the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Ealdwulf, bishop of the church of Mayo, have subscribed with
devout will.</item>
  <item>I, Æthelwine, bishop, have subscribed through delegates.</item>
  <item>I, Sicga, patrician, have subscribed with serene mind with the sign
of the Holy
  Cross.</item>
</list>
</p>

```

Note May contain an optional heading followed by a series of items, or a series of label and item pairs, the latter being optionally preceded by one or two specialized headings.

<listBibl> (citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind. [3.11.1. 2.2.7. 15.3.2.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.declarable (@default) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.listLike model.msItemPart

Contained by

core: add corr del desc emph head hi item l listBibl meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence rendition sourceDesc tagUsage

iso-fs: fDescr fsDescr

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript signed titlePart

transcr: damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct cb gb head lb listBibl milestone pb

header: biblFull

linking: anchor

transcr: fw

Declaration

```
element listBibl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( model.headLike*, ( model.biblLike | model.milestoneLike | listBibl )+ )
}
```

Example

```
<listBibl>
  <head>Works consulted</head>
  <bibl>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to
    Literature in English (Yale, 1990)
  </bibl>
  <biblStruct>
    <analytic>
      <title>The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</title>
    </analytic>
    <monogr>
      <title>The Penny Histories</title>
      <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>
      <imprint>
        <publisher>OUP</publisher>
        <date>1968</date>
      </imprint>
    </monogr>
  </biblStruct>
</listBibl>
```

<listChange> groups a number of change descriptions associated with either the creation of a source text or the revision of an encoded text.

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.sortable (@sortKey)

Ordered indicates whether the ordering of its child <change> elements is to be considered significant or not

Status Optional

Datatype data.truthValue

Default true

Member of *Contained by*

header: creation listChange revisionDesc

May contain

header: change listChange

Declaration

```
element listChange
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  attribute ordered { data.truthValue }?,
  ( listChange | change )+
}
```

Example

```
<revisionDesc>
  <listChange>
    <change when="1991-11-11" who="#LB"> deleted chapter 10 </change>
    <change when="1991-11-02" who="#MSM"> completed first draft </change>
  </listChange>
</revisionDesc>
```

Example

```
<profileDesc>
  <creation>
    <listChange ordered="true">
      <change xml:id="CHG-1">First stage, written in ink by a writer</change>
      <change xml:id="CHG-2">Second stage, written in Goethe's hand using
pencil</change>
      <change xml:id="CHG-3">Fixation of the revised passages and further
revisions by
        Goethe using ink</change>
      <change xml:id="CHG-4">Addition of another stanza in a different hand,
probably at a later stage</change>
    </listChange>
  </creation>
</profileDesc>
```

Note When this element appears within the <creation> element it documents the set of revision campaigns or stages identified during the evolution of the original text. When it appears within the <revisionDesc> element, it documents only changes made during the evolution of the encoded representation of that text.

<listPrefixDef> (list of prefix definitions) contains a list of definitions of prefixing schemes used in `data.pointer` values, showing how abbreviated URIs using each scheme may be expanded into full URIs. [16.2.3.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@rend`, `@style`, `@rendition`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) (`att.global.change` (`@change`))

Member of `model.encodingDescPart`

Contained by

header: encodingDesc listPrefixDef

May contain

header: listPrefixDef prefixDef

Declaration

```
element listPrefixDef
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( ( prefixDef | listPrefixDef )+ )
}
```

Example In this example, two private URI scheme prefixes are defined and patterns are provided for dereferencing them. Each prefix is also supplied with a human-readable explanation in a <p> element.

```
<listPrefixDef>
  <prefixDef ident="psn" matchPattern="([A-Z])+" replacementPattern="personography.xml#$1">
    <p> Private URIs using the <code>psn</code>
      prefix are pointers to <gi>person</gi>
      elements in the personography.xml file.
      For example, <code>psn:MDH</code>
      dereferences to <code>personography.xml#MDH</code>.
    </p>
  </prefixDef>
  <prefixDef
    ident="bibl"
    matchPattern="([a-z]+[a-z0-9]*)"
    replacementPattern="http://www.example.com/getBibl.xml?id=$1">
    <p> Private URIs using the <code>bibl</code> prefix can be
      expanded to form URIs which retrieve the relevant
      bibliographical reference from www.example.com.
    </p>
  </prefixDef>
</listPrefixDef>
```

<listTranspose> supplies a list of transpositions, each of which is indicated at some point in a document typically by means of metamarks.

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.global.meta model.profileDescPart

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

1 ELEMENTS

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom
hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg
xr

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote
language licence principal profileDesc sponsor

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate
docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur
opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface
surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain

transcr: transpose

Declaration

```
element listTranspose { att.global.attributes, transpose+ }
```

Example

```
<listTranspose>  
  <transpose>  
    <ptr target="#ib02"/>  
    <ptr target="#ib01"/>  
  </transpose>  
</listTranspose>
```

This example might be used for a source document which indicates in some way that the elements identified by **ib02** and code **ib01** should be read in that order (ib02 followed by ib01), rather than in the reading order in which they are presented in the source.

<localName> (locally-defined property name) contains a locally defined name for some property.

Module gaiji

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))

Member of

Contained by

gaiji: charProp

May contain Character data only

Declaration

```
element localName { att.global.attributes, text }
```

Example

```
<localName>daikanwa</localName>  
<localName>entity</localName>
```

Note No definitive list of local names is proposed. However, the name entity is recommended as a means of naming the property identifying the recommended character entity name for this character or glyph.

<locale> contains a brief informal description of the kind of place concerned, for example: a room, a restaurant, a park bench, etc. [15.2.3.]

Module corpus

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.settingPart

Contained by

corpus: setting

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

dictionaries: lang

figures: figure notatedMusic

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

transcr: addSpan am damageSpan delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst substJoin

Declaration

```
element locale { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq.limited }
```

Example

```
<locale>a fashionable restaurant</locale>
```

<m> (morpheme) represents a grammatical morpheme. [17.1.]

Module analysis

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.segLike (@function) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

@baseForm identifies the morpheme's base form.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.word`

Values a string of characters representing the spelling of the morpheme's base form.

Member of model.segLike

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m span spanGrp

core: cb gap gb index lb milestone note pb

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

transcr: addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

Declaration

```
element m
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute baseForm { data.word }?,
  ( text | model.gLike | seg | m | c | model.global )*
}
```

Example

```
<w type="adjective">
  <w type="noun">
    <m baseForm="con" type="prefix">com</m>
    <m type="root">fort</m>
  </w>
  <m type="suffix">able</m>
</w>
```

Note The type attribute may be used to indicate the type of morpheme, taking values such as clitic, prefix, stem, etc. as appropriate.

<mapping> (character mapping) contains one or more characters which are related to the parent character or glyph in some respect, as specified by the type attribute.

Module gaiji

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of

Contained by

gaiji: char glyph

May contain

gaiji: g

Declaration

```
element mapping { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attributes, macro.xtext }
```

Example

```
<mapping type="modern">r</mapping>
<mapping type="standard">□</mapping>
```

Note Suggested values for the type attribute include **exact** for exact equivalences, **uppercase** for uppercase equivalences, **lowercase** for lowercase equivalences, and **simplified** for simplified characters. The <g> elements contained by this element can point to either another <char> or <glyph>element or contain a character that is intended to be the target of this mapping.

<measure> contains a word or phrase referring to some quantity of an object or commodity, usually comprising a number, a unit, and a commodity name. [3.5.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.measurement (@unit, @quantity, @commodity)

@type specifies the type of measurement in any convenient typology.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Member of model.measureLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s span

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure measureGrp meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyp h iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder
geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage

iso-fs: fDescr fsDescr

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```

element measure
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.measurement.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```

<measure type="weight">
  <num>2</num> pounds of flesh
</measure>
<measure type="currency">£10-11-6d</measure>
<measure type="area">2 merks of old extent</measure>

```

Example

```

<measure commodity="rum" quantity="40" unit="hogshead">2 score hh
rum</measure>
<measure commodity="roses" quantity="12" unit="count">1 doz.
roses</measure>
<measure commodity="tulips" quantity="1" unit="count">a yellow
tulip</measure>

```

<measureGrp> (measure group) contains a group of dimensional specifications which relate to the same object, for example the height and width of a manuscript page.

[10.3.4.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.measurement (@unit, @quantity, @commodity) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.measureLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s span

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure measureGrp meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage

iso-fs: fDescr fsDescr

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

May contain

core: measure measureGrp num

gaiji: g

Declaration

```
element measureGrp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.measurement.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.measureLike )*
}
```

Example

```
<measureGrp type="leaves" unit="mm">
  <height scope="range">157-160</height>
  <width quantity="105"/>
</measureGrp>
<measureGrp type="ruledArea" unit="mm">
  <height quantity="90" scope="most"/>
  <width quantity="48" scope="most"/>
</measureGrp>
<measureGrp type="box" unit="in">
  <height quantity="12"/>
  <width quantity="10"/>
  <depth quantity="6"/>
</measureGrp>
```

<media> indicates the location of any form of external media such as an audio or video clip etc. [3.9.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.resourced (@url) att.declaring (@decls) att.timed (@start, @end) att.media (@width, @height, @scale) @mimeType (MIME media type) specifies the applicable multimedia internet

mail extension (MIME) media type

Derived from att.internetMedia

Status Required

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.word` separated by whitespace

Values The value should be a valid MIME media type

Member of model.graphicLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figure formula table

gaiji: char glyph

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: damage facsimile fw metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface surplus zone

May contain

core: desc

Declaration

```

element media
{
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.media.attribute.width,
  att.media.attribute.height,
  att.media.attribute.scale,
  att.resourced.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.timed.attributes,
  attribute mimeType { list { data.word+ } },
  model.descLike*
}

```

Example


```
<figure>
  <media mimeType="image/png" url="fig1.png"/>
  <head>Figure One: The View from the Bridge</head>
  <figDesc>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the
  foreground, and a
  series of buoys strung out between them.</figDesc>
</figure>
```

Example

```
<media dur="PT10S" mimeType="audio/wav" url="dingDong.wav">
  <desc>Ten seconds of bellringing sound</desc>
</media>
```

Example

```
<media
  dur="PT45M"
  mimeType="video/mp4"
  url="clip45.mp4"
  width="500px">
  <desc>A 45 minute video clip to be displayed in a window 500
  px wide </desc>
</media>
```

Note The attributes available for this element are not appropriate in all cases. For example, it makes no sense to specify the temporal duration of a graphic. Such errors are not currently detected. The mimeType attribute must be used to specify the MIME media type of the resource specified by the url attribute.

<meeting> contains the formalized descriptive title for a meeting or conference, for use in a bibliographic description for an item derived from such a meeting, or as a heading or preamble to publications emanating from it. [3.11.2.2.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.divWrapper model.respLike

Contained by

core: bibl lg list monogr

figures: table

header: editionStmt titleStmt

textstructure: body div group

May contain

core: abbr address bibl biblStruct choice cit date desc distinct email emph expan foreign gloss hi label list listBibl measure measureGrp mentioned name num ptr q quote ref rs said soCalled stage term time title

dictionaries: lang

figures: table

header: biblFull idno

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: am ex subst

Declaration

```
element meeting { att.global.attributes, macro.limitedContent }
```

Example

```
<div>
  <meeting>Ninth International Conference on Middle High German Textual
  Criticism, Aachen,
  June 1998.</meeting>
  <list type="attendance">
    <head>List of Participants</head>
    <item>
      <persName>...</persName>
    </item>
    <item>
      <persName>...</persName>
    </item>
  </list>
  <p>...</p>
</div>
```

<mentioned> marks words or phrases mentioned, not used. [3.3.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.emphLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s span

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage

iso-fs: fDescr fsDescr

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element mentioned { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example

```
There is thus a  
striking accentual difference between a verbal form like  
<mentioned xml:id="X234" xml:lang="el">eluthemen</mentioned>  
<gloss target="#X234">we were released,</gloss> accented on the second  
syllable of the  
word, and its participial derivative  
<mentioned xml:id="X235" xml:lang="el">lutheis</mentioned>  
<gloss target="#X235">released,</gloss> accented on the last.
```

<metamark> contains or describes any kind of graphic or written signal within a document the function of which is to determine how it should be read rather than forming part of the actual content of the document.

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.spanning (@spanTo) att.placement (@place) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

@function describes the function (for example status, insertion, deletion, transposition) of the mark.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.word`

@target identifies one or more elements to which the function indicated by the metamark applies.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Member of model.global

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del
distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint
item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q

quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang
time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale
preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom
hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg
xr

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote
language licence principal sponsor

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate
docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur
opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface
surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb
ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element metamark
{
  att.spanning.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute function { data.word }?,
  attribute target { list { data.pointer+ } }?,
  macro.specialPara}

```

<milestone/> marks a boundary point separating any kind of section of a text, typically but not necessarily indicating a point at which some part of a standard reference system changes, where the change is not represented by a structural element. [3.10.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.milestoneUnit (@unit) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.edition (@ed, @edRef) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.breaking (@break)

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list listBibl measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal sponsor

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc subst supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element milestone
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.milestoneUnit.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.edition.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  att.breaking.attributes,
  empty
}
```

Example

```
<milestone ed="La" n="23" unit="Dreissiger"/>
... <milestone ed="AV" n="24" unit="verse"/> ...
```

Note For this element, the global n attribute indicates the new number or other value for the unit which changes at this milestone. The special value *unnumbered* should be used in passages which fall outside the normal numbering scheme, such as chapter or other headings, poem numbers or titles, etc. The order in which milestone elements are given at a given point is not normally significant.

<mod> represents any kind of modification identified within a single document.

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.transcriptional (@hand, @status, @cause, @seq) (att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant)) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope)) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp))) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.spanning (@spanTo)

Member of model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: cl pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: am damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element mod
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.transcriptional.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}
```

Example

```
<mod type="subst">
  <add>pleasing</add>
  <del>agreable</del>
</mod>
```

<monogr> (monographic level) contains bibliographic elements describing an item (e.g. a book or journal) published as an independent item (i.e. as a separate physical object). [3.11.2.1.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of

Contained by

core: biblStruct

May contain

core: author biblScope editor imprint meeting note ref respStmt textLang title

header: authority edition extent funder idno sponsor

Declaration

```
element monogr
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    (
      (
        ( author | editor | meeting | respStmt ),
        ( author | editor | meeting | respStmt )*,
        title+,
        ( idno | textLang | editor | respStmt )*
      )
    | (
      ( title | ref )+,
      ( idno | textLang | author | editor | meeting | respStmt )*
    )
    | ( authority, idno )
  )?,
  model.noteLike*,
  ( edition, ( idno | editor | sponsor | funder | respStmt )* )*,
  imprint,
  ( imprint | extent | biblScope )*
}
```

Example

```
<biblStruct>
  <analytic>
    <author>Chesnutt, David</author>
    <title>Historical Editions in the States</title>
  </analytic>
</monogr>
```

```
<title level="j">Computers and the Humanities</title>
<imprint>
  <date when="1991-12">(December, 1991):</date>
</imprint>
<biblScope>25.6</biblScope>
<biblScope from="377" to="380" unit="pp">377–380</biblScope>
</monogr>
</biblStruct>
```

Example

```
<biblStruct type="book">
  <monogr>
    <author>
      <persName>
        <forename>Leo Joachim</forename>
        <surname>Frachtenberg</surname>
      </persName>
    </author>
    <title level="m" type="main">Lower Umpqua Texts</title>
    <imprint>
      <pubPlace>New York</pubPlace>
      <publisher>Columbia University Press</publisher>
      <date>1914</date>
    </imprint>
  </monogr>
  <series>
    <title level="s" type="main">Columbia University Contributions to
      Anthropology</title>
    <biblScope unit="vol">4</biblScope>
  </series>
</biblStruct>
```

Note May contain specialized bibliographic elements, in a prescribed order. The <monogr> element may only occur only within a <biblStruct>, where its use is mandatory for the description of a monographic-level bibliographic item.

<mood> contains information about the grammatical mood of verbs (e.g. indicative, subjunctive, imperative). [9.3.1.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))

Member of model.morphLike

Contained by

dictionaries: dictScrap entryFree etym form gramGrp

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar
figures: figure formula notatedMusic table
gaiji: g
header: biblFull idno
iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib
linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline
textstructure: floatingText
transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo
Declaration

```
element mood
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example Taken from *Wörterbuch der Deutschen Sprache. Veranstalet und herausgegeben von Joachim Heinrich Campe. Vierter Theil. S - bis - T. (Braunschweig 1810. In der Schulbuchhandlung):*

Treffen, v. unregelm. ... du triffst, ...

```
<entry>
  <form type="inflected">
    <gramGrp>
      <per value="2"/>
      <number value="singular"/>
      <tns value="present"/>
      <mood value="indicative"/>
    </gramGrp>
    <form type="personalpronoun">
      <orth>du</orth>
    </form>
    <form type="headword">
      <orth>
        <oVar>triffst</oVar>
      </orth>
    </form>
  </form>
</entry>

```

Note This element is synonymous with <gram type="mood">.

<name> (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase. [3.5.1.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))) att.dateable (@calendar, @period) (att.dateable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent,

@precision, @scope) (att.ranging (*@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence*)))
 (att.responsibility (*@cert, @resp*)) att.typed (*@type, @subtype*)

Member of model.nameLike.agent

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s span

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc
 distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l
 label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote
 ref reg resp respStmt rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time
 title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale
 preparedness purpose setting

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph
 iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder
 geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage

iso-fs: fDescr fsDescr

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan
 foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```

element name
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.personal.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
  
```

Example

```

<name type="person">Thomas Hoccleve</name>
<name type="place">Villingaholt</name>
  
```

```
<name type="org">Vetus Latina Institut</name>
<name ref="#HOC001" type="person">Occleve</name>
```

Note Proper nouns referring to people, places, and organizations may be tagged instead with <persName>, <placeName>, or <orgName>, when the TEI module for names and dates is included.

<namespace> supplies the formal name of the namespace to which the elements documented by its children belong. [2.3.4.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

@name specifies the full formal name of the namespace concerned.

Status Required

Datatype data.namespace

Member of

header: tagsDecl

May contain

header: tagUsage

Declaration

```
element namespace
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute name { data.namespace },
  tagUsage+
}
```

Example

```
<namespace name="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <tagUsage
    gi="hi"
    occurs="28"
    render="#it"
    withId="2"> Used only to mark English words
    italicized in the copy text </tagUsage>
</namespace>
```

<normalization> indicates the extent of normalization or regularization of the original source carried out in converting it to electronic form. [2.3.3. 15.3.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.declarable (@default)

@source indicates the authority for any normalization carried out.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.pointer`

Values Points to a bibliographic description or other resource documenting the principles underlying the normalization which has been applied.

@method indicates the method adopted to indicate normalizations within the text.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Legal values are: **silent** normalization made silently [Default]

markup normalization represented using markup

Member of model.editorialDeclPart

Contained by

header: editorialDecl

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

Declaration

```
element normalization
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  attribute source { data.pointer }?,
  attribute method { "silent" | "markup" }?,
  model.pLike+
}
```

Example

```
<editorialDecl>
  <normalization method="markup">
    <p>Where both upper- and lower-case i, j, u, v, and vv have been
normalized, to modern
      20th century typographical practice, the <gi>choice</gi> element has
been used to
        enclose <gi>orig</gi> and <gi>reg</gi> elements giving the original
and new values
          respectively. ... </p>
    </normalization>
  <normalization method="silent">
    <p>Spacing between words and following punctuation has been regularized
to zero spaces;
      spacing between words has been regularized to one space.</p>
    </normalization>
  <normalization source="http://www.dict.sztaki.hu/webster">
    <p>Spelling converted throughout to Modern American usage, based on
Websters 9th
      Collegiate dictionary.</p>
    </normalization>
</editorialDecl>
```

<notatedMusic> encodes the presence of music notation in a text

Module figures

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.placement (@place) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.global

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal sponsor

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain

core: binaryObject desc graphic label ptr ref

Declaration

```
element notatedMusic
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( model.labelLike | model.ptrLike | graphic | binaryObject )*
}
```

Example

```
<notatedMusic>
  <ptr target="bar1.xml"/>
  <graphic url="bar1.jpg"/>
  <desc>First bar of Chopin's Scherzo No.3 Op.39</desc>
</notatedMusic>
```

Note It is possible to describe the content of the notation using elements from the model.labelLike class and it is possible to point to an external representation using elements from model.ptrLike. It is possible to specify the location of digital objects representing the notated music in other media such as images or audio-visual files.

The encoder's interpretation of the correspondence between the notated music and these digital objects is not encoded explicitly. We recommend the use of graphic and binaryObject mainly as a fallback mechanism when the notated music format is not displayable by the application using the encoding. The alignment of encoded notated music, images carrying the notation, and audio files is a complex matter for which we refer the encoder to other formats and specifications such as MPEG-SMR.

<note> contains a note or annotation. [3.8.1. 2.2.6. 3.11.2.7. 9.3.5.4.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) att.placement (*@place*) att.pointing (*@targetLang*, *@target*, *@evaluate*) att.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

@anchored indicates whether the copy text shows the exact place of reference for the note.

Status Optional

Datatype data.truthValue

Default true

Note In modern texts, notes are usually anchored by means of explicit footnote or endnote symbols. An explicit indication of the phrase or line annotated may however be used instead (e.g. 'page 218, lines 3–4'). The anchored attribute indicates whether any explicit location is given, whether by symbol or by prose cross-reference. The value true indicates that such an explicit location is indicated in the copy text; the value false indicates that the copy text does not indicate a specific place of attachment for the note. If the specific symbols used in the copy text at the location the note is anchored are to be recorded, use the *n* attribute.

@targetEnd points to the end of the span to which the note is attached, if the note is not embedded in the text at that point.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of data.pointer separated by whitespace

Values reference to the *xml:id*(s) of element(s) which *end* at the location(s) in question, or to an empty element at the point in question.

Note This attribute is retained for backwards compatibility; it may be removed at a subsequent release of the Guidelines. The recommended way of pointing to a span of elements is by means of the range function of XPointer, as further described in 16.2.5.4..

Member of model.noteLike

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope biblStruct cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned monogr name note num orig p

pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figure table

gaiji: char glyph

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence notesStmt principal sponsor

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element note
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.responsibility.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute anchored { data.truthValue }?,
  attribute targetEnd { list { data.pointer+ } }?,
  macro.specialPara}

```

Example In the following example, the translator has supplied a footnote containing an explanation of the term translated as "painterly":

And yet it is not only
in the great line of Italian renaissance art, but even in the
painterly <note place="bottom" resp="#MDMH" type="gloss">

```
<term xml:lang="de">Malerisch</term>. This word has, in the German, two
distinct meanings, one objective, a quality residing in the object,
the other subjective, a mode of apprehension and creation. To avoid
confusion, they have been distinguished in English as
<mentioned>picturesque</mentioned> and
<mentioned>painterly</mentioned> respectively.
</note> style of the
Dutch genre painters of the seventeenth century that drapery has this
psychological significance.
```

For this example to be valid, the code MDMH must be defined elsewhere, for example by means of a responsibility statement in the associated TEI Header:

```
<respStmt xml:id="MDMH">
  <resp>translation from German to English</resp>
  <name>Hottinger, Marie Donald Mackie</name>
</respStmt>
```

Example The global `n` attribute may be used to supply the symbol or number used to mark the note's point of attachment in the source text, as in the following example:

```
Mevorakh b. Saadya's mother, the matriarch of the
family during the second half of the eleventh century,
<note anchored="true" n="126"> The
alleged mention of Judah Nagid's mother in a letter from 1071 is, in fact,
a reference to
Judah's children; cf. above, nn. 111 and 54. </note> is well known from
Geniza documents
published by Jacob Mann.
```

However, if notes are numbered in sequence and their numbering can be reconstructed automatically by processing software, it may well be considered unnecessary to record the note numbers.

<notesStmt> (notes statement) collects together any notes providing information about a text additional to that recorded in other parts of the bibliographic description. [2.2.6. 2.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@rend`, `@style`, `@rendition`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) (`att.global.change` (`@change`))

Member of

Contained by

header: biblFull fileDesc

May contain

core: note

Declaration

element notesStmt { att.global.attributes, model.noteLike+ }
--

Example


```
<notesStmt>
  <note>Historical commentary provided by Mark Cohen</note>
  <note>OCR scanning done at University of Toronto</note>
</notesStmt>
```

Note Information of different kinds should not be grouped together into the same note.

<num> (number) contains a number, written in any form. [3.5.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)

@type indicates the type of numeric value.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Suggested values include: **cardinal** absolute number, e.g. 21, 21.5

ordinal ordinal number, e.g. 21st

fraction fraction, e.g. one half or three-quarters

percentage a percentage

Note If a different typology is desired, other values can be used for this attribute.

@value supplies the value of the number in standard form.

Status Optional

Datatype data.numeric

Values a numeric value.

Note The standard form used is defined by the TEI datatype data.numeric.

Member of model.measureLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s span

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure measureGrp meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyp h iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage

iso-fs: fDescr fsDescr

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element num
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.ranging.attributes,
  attribute type
  {
    "cardinal" | "ordinal" | "fraction" | "percentage" | xsd:Name
  }?,
  attribute value { data.numeric }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<p>I reached <num type="cardinal" value="21">twenty-one</num> on  
my <num type="ordinal" value="21">twenty-first</num> birthday</p>  
<p>Light travels at <num value="3E10">3×10<hi rend="sup">10</hi>  
</num> cm per second.</p>
```

Note Detailed analyses of quantities and units of measure in historical documents may also use the feature structure mechanism described in chapter 18.. The <num> element is intended for use in simple applications.

<number> indicates grammatical number associated with a form, as given in a dictionary. [9.3.1. 9.3.2.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))

Member of model.morphLike

Contained by

dictionaries: dictScrap entryFree etym form gramGrp

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr
q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element number
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```
<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>wits</orth>
    <pron>wIts</pron>
  </form>
  <gramGrp>
    <number>pl</number>
    <pos>n</pos>
  </gramGrp>
</entry>

```

Note This element is synonymous with <gram type="num">.

<numeric/> (numeric value) represents the value part of a feature-value specification which contains a numeric value or range. [18.3.]

Module iso-fs

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)

@value supplies a lower bound for the numeric value represented, and also (if max is not supplied) its upper bound.

Status Required

Datatype `data.numeric`

@max supplies an upper bound for the numeric value represented.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.numeric`

@trunc specifies whether the value represented should be truncated to give an integer value.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.truthValue`

Member of model.featureVal.single

Contained by

iso-fs: f fvLib if vAlt vColl vDefault vLabel vMerge vNot vRange

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element numeric
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.datcat.attributes,
  attribute value { data.numeric },
  attribute max { data.numeric }?,
  attribute trunc { data.truthValue }?,
  empty
}
```

Example

```
<numeric value="42"/>
```

This represents the numeric value 42.

Example

```
<numeric max="50" trunc="true" value="42.45"/>
```

This represents any of the nine possible integer values between 42 and 50 inclusive. If the trunc attribute had the value FALSE, this example would represent any of the infinite number of numeric values between 42.45 and 50.0

Note It is an error to supply the max attribute in the absence of a value for the value attribute.

<oRef/> (orthographic-form reference) in a dictionary example, indicates a reference to the orthographic form(s) of the headword. [9.4.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate)

@type indicates the kind of typographic modification made to the headword in the reference.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Sample values include: **cap** (capital) indicates first letter is given as capital

noHyph (no hyphen) indicates that the headword, though a prefix or suffix, loses its hyphen

Member of model.ptrLike.form

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email
emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure
mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic
soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph
iType lang lbl mood number oVar orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg
xr

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element oRef
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  empty
}
```

Example

```
<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>academy</orth>
  </form>
  <cit type="example">
    <quote>The Royal <oRef type="cap"/> of Arts</quote>
  </cit>
</entry>
```

<oVar> (orthographic-variant reference) in a dictionary example, indicates a reference to variant orthographic form(s) of the headword. [9.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate)
@type indicates the kind of variant involved.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Sample values include: **pt** (past tense)

pp (past participle)

prp (present participle)

f (feminine)

pl (plural)

Member of model.ptrLike.form

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email
emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure
mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic
soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

May contain

dictionaries: oRef

gaiji: g

Declaration

```
element oVar
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  ( text | model.gLike | oRef )*
}
```

Example

```
<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>take</orth>
  </form>
  <cit type="example">
    <quote>Mr Burton <oVar type="pt">took</oVar> us for French</quote>
  </cit>
</entry>
```

Note Character data or <oRef>.

<opener> groups together dateline, byline, salutation, and similar phrases appearing as a preliminary group at the start of a division, especially of a letter. [4.2.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.divTopPart

Contained by

core: lg list

textstructure: body div group postscript

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: argument byline dateline epigraph salute signed

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element opener
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.phrase      | argument      | byline      | dateline      | epigraph
  )
}
```

Example

```
<opener>
  <dateline>Walden, this 29. of August 1592</dateline>
</opener>
```

Example

```
<opener>
  <dateline>
    <name type="place">Great Marlborough Street</name>
    <date>November 11, 1848</date>
  </dateline>
  <salute>My dear Sir,</salute>
</opener>
<p>I am sorry to say that absence from town and other circumstances have
prevented me from
earlier enquiring...</p>
```

<orig> (original form) contains a reading which is marked as following the original, rather than being normalized or corrected. [3.4.2. 12.]

Module core

Attributes *Attributes* att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: cl pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: am damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element orig
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.responsibility.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example If all that is desired is to call attention to the original version in the copy text, <orig> may be used alone:


```
<l>But this will be a <orig>meere</orig> confusion</l>
<l>And hardly shall we all be <orig>vnderstoode</orig>
</l>
```

Example More usually, an <orig> will be combined with a regularized form within a <choice> element:

```
<l>But this will be a <choice>
  <orig>meere</orig>
  <reg>mere</reg>
</choice> confusion</l>
<l>And hardly shall we all be <choice>
  <orig>vnderstoode</orig>
  <reg>understood</reg>
</choice>
</l>
```

<orth> (orthographic form) gives the orthographic form of a dictionary headword. [9.3.1.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))

@type gives the type of spelling.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

@extent gives the extent of the orthographic information provided.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Sample values include: **full** (full form) [Default]

pref (prefix)

suff (suffix)

part (partial)

Member of model.entryPart model.formPart

Contained by

core: cit

dictionaries: dictScrap entryFree form

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

1 ELEMENTS

header: biblFull idno
iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib
linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline
textstructure: floatingText
transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo
Declaration

```
element orth
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  attribute extent { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```
<form type="infl">
  <orth>brags</orth>
  <orth>bragging</orth>
  <orth>bragged</orth>
</form>

```

Example

```
<form>
  <orth type="standard" xml:lang="ko-Hang">ㅁㅁ</orth>
  <orth type="transliterated" xml:lang="ko-Latn">chida</orth>
</form>

```

<p> (paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose. [3.1. 7.2.5.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.declaring (@decls) att.fragmentable (@part)

Member of model.pLike

Contained by

core: item note q quote said sp stage

corpus: setting settingDesc

figures: figure

header: application availability cRefPattern calendar change correction editionStmt editorialDecl encodingDesc handNote hyphenation interpretation licence normalization prefixDef projectDesc publicationStmt quotation refsDecl samplingDecl segmentation seriesStmt sourceDesc stdVals styleDefDecl

textstructure: argument body div epigraph postscript

transcr: metamark

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element p
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.fragmentable.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```
<p>Hallgerd was outside. <q>There is blood on your axe,</q> she said.
<q>What have you
done?</q>
</p>
<p>
<q>I have now arranged that you can be married a second time,</q> replied
Thjostolf.
</p>
<p>
<q>Then you must mean that Thorvald is dead,</q> she said.
</p>
<p>
<q>Yes,</q> said Thjostolf. <q>And now you must think up some plan for
me.</q>
</p>
```

<pRef/> (pronunciation reference) in a dictionary example, indicates a reference to the pronunciation(s) of the headword. [9.4.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))

Member of model.ptrLike.form

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email
emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure
mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic
soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph
iType lang lbl mood number orth pVar per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg
xr

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element pRef
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  empty
}
```

<pVar> (pronunciation-variant reference) in a dictionary example, indicates a reference to variant pronunciation(s) of the headword. [9.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.links (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))

Member of model.ptrLike.form

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email
emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure
mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic
soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

May contain

dictionaries: pRef

gaiji: g

Declaration

```
element pVar
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  ( text | model.gLike | pRef )*
}
```

Note Character data or <pRef>.

<pb/> (page break) marks the boundary between one page of a text and the next in a standard reference system. [3.10.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.edition (@ed, @edRef) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.breaking (@break)

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list listBibl measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal sponsor

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc subst supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element pb
{
```

```
    att.global.attributes,  
    att.typed.attributes,  
    att.edition.attributes,  
    att.spanning.attributes,  
    att.breaking.attributes,  
    empty  
}
```

Example Page numbers may vary in different editions of a text.

```
<p> ... <pb ed="ed2" n="145"/>  
... <pb ed="ed1" n="283"/>  
... </p>
```

Example A page break may be associated with a facsimile image of the page it introduces by means of the `fac` attribute

```
<body>  
  <pb facs="page1.png" n="1"/>  
  <p/>  
  <pb facs="page2.png" n="2"/>  
  <p/>  
</body>
```

Note By convention, `<pb>` elements should appear at the start of the page to which they refer. The global `n` attribute indicates the number or other value associated with the page which follows. This will normally be the page number or signature printed on it, since the physical sequence number is implicit in the presence of the `<pb>` element itself. The `type` attribute may be used to characterize the page break in any respect, for example as word-breaking or not.

<pc> (punctuation character) contains a character or string of characters regarded as constituting a single punctuation mark. [17.1.]

Module analysis

Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@rend`, `@style`, `@rendition`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) (`att.global.change` (`@change`)) `att.segLike` (`@function`) (`att.datcat` (`@datcat`, `@valueDatcat`)) (`att.fragmentable` (`@part`)) `att.typed` (`@type`, `@subtype`)

@ctag Part-of-speech / lexical morphosyntactic tag.

Status Required

Datatype `text`

@resp Annotator responsible for validating the annotation.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.pointer`

@time Date and time of annotation.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.temporal.iso`

@force indicates the extent to which this punctuation mark conventionally separates words or phrases

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Legal values are: **strong** the punctuation mark is a word separator

weak the punctuation mark is not a word separator

inter the punctuation mark may or may not be a word separator

@unit provides a name for the kind of unit delimited by this punctuation mark.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

@pre indicates whether this punctuation mark precedes or follows the unit it delimits.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.truthValue`

Member of model.segLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyp h iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone

May contain

analysis: c

core: abbr add choice corr del expan orig reg sic unclear

gaiji: g

transcr: am damage ex handShift mod redo restore retrace subst supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```

element pc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute ctag { text },
  attribute resp { data.pointer }?,
  attribute time { data.temporal.iso }?,
  attribute force { "strong" | "weak" | "inter" }?,
  attribute unit { data.enumerated }?,
  attribute pre { data.truthValue }?,
  ( text | model.gLike | c | model.pPart.edit )*
}

```

Example

```

<phr>
  <w>do</w>
  <w>you</w>

```

```
<w>understand</w>
<pc type="interrogative">?</pc>
</phr>
```

<per> (person) contains an indication of the grammatical person (1st, 2nd, 3rd, etc.) associated with a given inflected form in a dictionary. [9.3.1.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))

Member of model.morphLike

Contained by

dictionaries: dictScrap entryFree etym form gramGrp

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element per
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example Taken from *Wörterbuch der Deutschen Sprache. Veranstalet und herausgegeben von Joachim Heinrich Campe. Vierter Theil. S - bis - T. (Braunschweig 1810. In der Schulbuchhandlung):*

Treffen, v. unregelm. ... du triffst, ...

```
<entry>
  <form type="inflected">
    <gramGrp>
      <per value="2"/>
```



```
<number value="singular"/>
<tns value="present"/>
<mood value="indicative"/>
</gramGrp>
<form type="personalpronoun">
  <orth>du</orth>
</form>
<form type="headword">
  <orth>
    <oVar>triffst</oVar>
  </orth>
</form>
</form>
</entry>
```

Note This element is synonymous with <gram type="person">.

<phr> (phrase) represents a grammatical phrase. [17.1.]

Module analysis

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.segLike (@function) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.segLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```

element phr
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```

<phr function="extraposted_modifier" type="verb">To talk
<phr function="complement" type="preposition">of
  <phr function="object" type="noun">many things</phr>
</phr>
</phr>

```

Note The type attribute may be used to indicate the type of phrase, taking values such as noun, verb, preposition, etc. as appropriate.

<pos> (part of speech) indicates the part of speech assigned to a dictionary headword such as noun, verb, or adjective. [9.3.2.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))

Member of model.entryPart model.gramPart

Contained by

core: cit

dictionaries: dictScrap entryFree form gramGrp

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element pos
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}
```

Example

```
<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>isotope</orth>
  </form>
  <gramGrp>
    <pos>adj</pos>
  </gramGrp>
</entry>
```

<postBox> (postal box or post office box) contains a number or other identifier for some postal delivery point other than a street address. [3.5.2.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.addrPart

Contained by

core: address

May contain Character data only

Declaration

```
element postBox { att.global.attributes, text }
```

Example

```
<postBox>P.O. Box 280</postBox>
```

Example

```
<postBox>Postbus 532</postBox>
```

Note The position and nature of postal codes is highly country-specific; the conventions appropriate to the country concerned should be used.

<postCode> (postal code) contains a numerical or alphanumeric code used as part of a postal address to simplify sorting or delivery of mail. [3.5.2.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.addrPart

Contained by

core: address

May contain Character data only

Declaration `element postCode { att.global.attributes, text }`

Example

```
<postCode>HR1 3LR</postCode>
```

Example

```
<postCode>60142-7</postCode>
```

Note The position and nature of postal codes is highly country-specific; the conventions appropriate to the country concerned should be used.

<postscript> contains a postscript, e.g. to a letter. [4.2.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.divBottomPart

Contained by

core: lg list

figures: figure table

textstructure: back body div front group postscript

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: bibl biblStruct cb cit desc gap gb head index l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage

dictionaries: entry entryFree superEntry

figures: figure notatedMusic table

header: biblFull

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

textstructure: closer floatingText opener postscript signed trailer

transcr: addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

Declaration

```
element postscript
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    ( model.global | model.divTopPart )*,
    ( model.common ),
    ( model.global | model.common )*,
    ( ( model.divBottomPart ), model.global* )*
  )
}
```

Example

```
<div type="letter">
  <opener>
    <dateline>
      <placeName>Rimaone</placeName>
      <date when="2006-11-21">21 Nov 06</date>
    </dateline>
    <salute>Dear Susan,</salute>
  </opener>
  <p>Thank you very much for the assistance splitting those
  logs. I'm sorry about the misunderstanding as to the size of
  the task. I really was not asking for help, only to borrow the
  axe. Hope you had fun in any case.</p>
  <closer>
    <salute>Sincerely yours,</salute>
    <signed>Seymour</signed>
  </closer>
  <postscript>
    <label>P.S.</label>
    <p>The collision occured on <date when="2001-07-06">06 Jul 01</date>.</p>
  </postscript>
</div>
```

<prefixDef> (prefixing scheme used in data.pointer values) defines a prefixing scheme used in data.pointer values, showing how abbreviated URIs using the scheme may be expanded into full URIs. [16.2.3.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.patternReplacement (@matchPattern, @replacementPattern)

@ident supplies the identifier which functions as the prefix for an abbreviated pointing scheme such as a private URI scheme. The prefix constitutes the text preceding the first colon.

Status Required

Datatype data.name

Values an XML name

Member of ~~Contained by~~

header: listPrefixDef

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

Declaration

```
element prefixDef
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.patternReplacement.attributes,
  attribute ident { data.name },
  model.pLike*
}
```

Example

```
<prefixDef
  ident="ref"
  matchPattern="([a-z]+)"
  replacementPattern="../../references/references.xml#$1">
  <p> In the context of this project, private URIs with
    the prefix "ref" point to <gi>div</gi> elements in
    the project's global references.xml file.
  </p>
</prefixDef>
```

Note Where `matchPattern` and `replacementPattern` are both supplied, the abbreviated pointer may be dereferenced to produce either an absolute or a relative URI reference. In the latter case it is combined with the value of `xml:base` in force at the place where the `cRef` attribute occurs to form an absolute URI in the usual manner as prescribed by XML Base.

<preparedness> describes the extent to which a text may be regarded as prepared or spontaneous. [15.2.1.]

Module corpus

Attributes Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@rend`, `@style`, `@rendition`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) (`att.global.change` (`@change`))

@type a keyword characterizing the type of preparedness.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Sample values include: **none** spontaneous or unprepared

scripted follows a script

formulaic follows a predefined set of conventions

revised polished or revised before presentation

Member of model.textDescPart

Contained by

corpus: textDesc

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

dictionaries: lang

figures: figure notatedMusic

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

transcr: addSpan am damageSpan delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst substJoin

Declaration

```
element preparedness
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}

```

Example

```
<preparedness type="none"/>
```

<principal> (principal researcher) supplies the name of the principal researcher responsible for the creation of an electronic text. [2.2.1.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.respLike

Contained by

core: bibl

header: editionStmt titleStmt

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

dictionaries: lang

figures: figure notatedMusic

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

transcr: addSpan am damageSpan delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst substJoin

Declaration

```
element principal { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq.limited }
```

Example

```
<principal>Gary Taylor</principal>
```

<profileDesc> (text-profile description) provides a detailed description of non-bibliographic aspects of a text, specifically the languages and sublanguages used, the situation in which it was produced, the participants and their setting. [2.4. 2.1.1.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.teiHeaderPart

Contained by

header: teiHeader

May contain

corpus: settingDesc textDesc

header: calendarDesc creation langUsage textClass

transcr: handNotes listTranspose

Declaration

```
element profileDesc { att.global.attributes, ( model.profileDescPart* ) }
```

Example

```
<profileDesc>
  <langUsage>
    <language ident="fr">French</language>
  </langUsage>
  <textDesc n="novel">
    <channel mode="w">print; part issues</channel>
    <constitution type="single"/>
    <derivation type="original"/>
    <domain type="art"/>
    <factuality type="fiction"/>
    <interaction type="none"/>
    <preparedness type="prepared"/>
    <purpose degree="high" type="entertain"/>
    <purpose degree="medium" type="inform"/>
  </textDesc>
  <settingDesc>
    <setting>
      <name>Paris, France</name>
      <time>Late 19th century</time>
    </setting>
  </settingDesc>
</profileDesc>
```

Note Although the content model permits it, it is rarely meaningful to supply multiple occurrences for any of the child elements of <profileDesc>. In earlier versions of these Guidelines, it was required that the <creation> element appear first.

<projectDesc> (project description) describes in detail the aim or purpose for which an electronic file was encoded, together with any other relevant information concerning the process by which it was assembled or collected. [2.3.1. 2.3. 15.3.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.declarable (@default)

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

Declaration

```

element projectDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  model.pLike+
}

```

Example

```

<projectDesc>
  <p>Texts collected for use in the Claremont Shakespeare Clinic, June
  1990</p>
</projectDesc>

```

<pron> (pronunciation) contains the pronunciation(s) of the word. [9.3.1.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))

@extent indicates whether the pronunciation is for whole word or part.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Sample values include: full (full form) [Default]

pref (prefix)

suff (suffix)

part (partial)

Note

@notation indicates what notation is used for the pronunciation, if more than one occurs in the machine-readable dictionary.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Values Sample values: IPA, Murray, ...

Member of model.entryPart model.formPart

Contained by

core: cit

dictionaries: dictScrap entryFree form

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list

listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr
q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```

element pron
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  attribute extent { data.enumerated }?,
  attribute notation { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```

<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>obverse</orth>
    <pron>'äb-`ərs</pron>,
    <pron extent="prefix">äb-`</pron>, <pron extent="prefix">əb-`</pron>
  </form>
  <gramGrp>
    <pos>n</pos>
  </gramGrp>
</entry>

```

<ptr/> (pointer) defines a pointer to another location. [3.6. 16.1.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.internetMedia (@mimeType) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declaring (@decls) att.cReferencing (@cRef)

Member of model.ptrLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s span

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope biblStruct cit citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg relatedItem resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figDesc notatedMusic

header: application authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage

iso-fs: fDescr fsDescr

linking: ab altGrp joinGrp linkGrp seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus transpose

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element ptr
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.internetMedia.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.cReferencing.attributes,
  empty
}
```

Schematron <s:report test="@target and @cRef">Only one of the attributes @target and @cRef may be supplied on <s:name/>.</s:report>

Example

```
<ptr target="#p143 #p144"/>
<ptr target="http://www.tei-c.org"/>
<ptr cRef="1.3.4"/>
```

<pubPlace> (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published. [3.11.2.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))

Member of model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart

Contained by

core: bibl imprint

header: publicationStmt

textstructure: docImprint

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w
core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan
 foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```

element pubPlace
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```

<publicationStmt>
  <publisher>Oxford University Press</publisher>
  <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
  <date>1989</date>
</publicationStmt>

```

<publicationStmt> (publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text. [2.2.4. 2.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))

Member of

Contained by

header: biblFull fileDesc

May contain

core: address date p pubPlace publisher

header: authority availability distributor idno

linking: ab

Declaration

```

element publicationStmt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | model.publicationStmtPart+ )
}

```

Example

```
<publicationStmt>
  <publisher>C. Muquardt </publisher>
  <pubPlace>Bruxelles & Leipzig</pubPlace>
  <date when="1846"/>
</publicationStmt>
```

Example

```
<publicationStmt>
  <publisher>Chadwyck Healey</publisher>
  <pubPlace>Cambridge</pubPlace>
  <availability>
    <p>Available under licence only</p>
  </availability>
  <date when="1992">1992</date>
</publicationStmt>
```

Note Although not enforced by the schemas, it is a requirement for TEI conformance that information about publication place, address, identifier, availability, and date be given in that order, following the name of the publisher, distributor, or authority concerned

<publisher> provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item. [3.11.2.3. 2.2.4.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart

Contained by

core: bibl imprint

header: publicationStmt

textstructure: docImprint

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

element publisher { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
--

Example

```
<imprint>
  <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
  <publisher>Clarendon Press</publisher>
  <date>1987</date>
</imprint>
```

Note Use the full form of the name by which a company is usually referred to, rather than any abbreviation of it which may appear on a title page

<purpose> characterizes a single purpose or communicative function of the text.

[15.2.1.]

Module corpus

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))

@type specifies a particular kind of purpose.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Suggested values include: **persuade** didactic, advertising, propaganda, etc.

express self expression, confessional, etc.

inform convey information, educate, etc.

entertain amuse, entertain, etc.

@degree specifies the extent to which this purpose predominates.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.certainty`

Note Values should be interpreted as follows.

high this purpose is predominant

medium this purpose is intermediate

low this purpose is weak

unknown extent unknown

Member of **Conf** *contained by*

corpus: textDesc

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

dictionaries: lang

figures: figure notatedMusic

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

transcr: addSpan am damageSpan delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst
substJoin

Declaration

```
element purpose
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type
  {
    "persuade" | "express" | "inform" | "entertain" | xsd:Name
  }?,
  attribute degree { data.certainty }?,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}

```

Example

```
<purpose degree="high" type="persuade"/>
<purpose degree="low" type="entertain"/>

```

Note Usually empty, unless some further clarification of the type attribute is needed, in which case it may contain running prose

<q> (quoted) contains material which is distinguished from the surrounding text using quotation marks or a similar method, for any one of a variety of reasons including, but not limited to: direct speech or thought, technical terms or jargon, authorial distance, quotations from elsewhere, and passages that are mentioned but not used. [3.3.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.ascribed (@who) att.source (@source)

@type may be used to indicate whether the offset passage is spoken or thought, or to characterize it more finely.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Suggested values include: **spoken** representation of speech

thought representation of thought, e.g. internal monologue

written quotation from a written source

soCalled authorial distance

foreign (foreign words)

distinct (linguistically distinct)

term (technical term)

emph (rhetorically emphasized)

mentioned referring to itself, not its normal referant

Member of model.qLike

Contained by

core: add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title unclear

1 ELEMENTS

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence rendition tagUsage

iso-fs: fDescr fsDescr

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript signed
titlePart

transcr: damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb
ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element q
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  att.source.attributes,
  attribute type
  {
    "spoken"
    | "thought"
    | "written"
    | "soCalled"
    | "foreign"
    | "distinct"
    | "term"
    | "emph"
    | "mentioned"
    | xsd:Name
  }?,
  macro.specialPara}

```

Example

It is spelled <q>Tübingen</q> – to enter the
letter <q>u</q> with an umlaut hold down the <q>option</q> key and press
<q>0 0 f c</q>

Note May be used to indicate that a passage is distinguished from the surrounding text
for reasons concerning which no claim is made. When used in this manner, <q>

may be thought of as syntactic sugar for <hi> with a value of rend that indicates the use of such mechanisms as quotation marks.

<quotation> specifies editorial practice adopted with respect to quotation marks in the original. [2.3.3. 15.3.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.declarable (@default)

@marks (quotation marks) indicates whether or not quotation marks have been retained as content within the text.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Legal values are: **none** no quotation marks have been retained

some some quotation marks have been retained

all all quotation marks have been retained

@form specifies how quotation marks are indicated within the text.

Status Optional

Default unknown

Note The form attribute is deprecated. Although retained for compatibility, this attribute will be removed at a subsequent release.

Member of model.editorialDeclPart

Contained by

header: editorialDecl

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

Declaration

```
element quotation
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  attribute marks { "none" | "some" | "all" }?,
  attribute form { text }?,
  model.pLike*
}
```

Schematron <s:report test="not(@marks) and not (tei:p)">On <s:name/>, either the @marks attribute should be used, or a paragraph of description provided</s:report>

Example

```
<quotation marks="none">
  <p>No quotation marks have been retained. Instead, the <att>rend</att>
attribute on the
  <gi>q</gi> element is used to specify what kinds of quotation mark was
used, according
  to the following list: <list type="gloss">
  <label>dq</label>
```

```
<item>double quotes, open and close</item>
<label>sq</label>
<item>single quotes, open and close</item>
<label>dash</label>
<item>long dash open, no close</item>
<label>dg</label>
<item>double guillemets, open and close</item>
</list>
</p>
</quotation>
```

Example

```
<quotation marks="all">
  <p>All quotation marks are retained in the text and are represented by
  appropriate Unicode
  characters.</p>
</quotation>
```

<quote> (quotation) contains a phrase or passage attributed by the narrator or author to some agency external to the text. [3.3.3. 4.3.1.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.source (@source)

Member of model.quoteLike

Contained by

core: add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence rendition tagUsage

iso-fs: fDescr fsDescr

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript signed titlePart

transcr: damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno
iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib
linking: ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline
textstructure: floatingText
transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element quote
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.source.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}
```

Example

```
Lexicography has shown little sign of being affected by the
work of followers of J.R. Firth, probably best summarized in his
slogan, <quote>You shall know a word by the company it
keeps</quote>
<ref>(Firth, 1957)</ref>
```

Note If a bibliographic citation is supplied for the source of a quotation, the two may be grouped using the <cit> element.

<re> (related entry) contains a dictionary entry for a lexical item related to the headword, such as a compound phrase or derived form, embedded inside a larger entry. [9.3.6.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.entryPart model.entryPart.top

Contained by

core: cit

dictionaries: dictScrap entry entryFree hom re sense

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del distinct email emph
expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

dictionaries: def dictScrap etym form gramGrp lang oRef oVar pRef pVar re sense usg xr

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```

element re
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | sense      | model.entryPart.top    | model.phrase      | model.global
  )
}

```

Example The following example from *Webster's New Collegiate Dictionary* (Springfield, Mass.: G. & C. Merriam Company, 1975) shows a single related entry for which no definition is given, since its meaning is held to be readily derivable from the root entry:

```

<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>neu·ral</orth>
    <pron>'n(y)ūr-əl</pron>
  </form>
  <gramGrp>
    <pos>adj</pos>
  </gramGrp>
  <sense n="1">
    <def>of, relating to, or affecting a nerve or the nervous system</def>
  </sense>
  <sense n="2"> ... </sense>
  <re>
    <form>
      <orth>neurally</orth>
      <pron extent="suffix">-ə-lē</pron>
    </form>
    <gramGrp>
      <pos>adv</pos>
    </gramGrp>
  </re>
</entry>

```

Example The following example from *Diccionario de la Universidad de Chicago Inglés-Español y Español-Inglés / The University of Chicago Spanish Dictionary, Fourth Edition, compiled by Carlos Castillo and Otto F. Bond* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1987) shows a number of related entries embedded in the main entry. The original entry resembles the following:

abeja [a · bé · xa]*f.* bee; **abejera** [a · be · xé · ra]*f.* beehive; **abejón** [a · be · xóon]*m.* drone; bumblebee; **abejorro** [a · be · xó · rro]*m.* bumble bee.

One encoding for this entry would be:

```

<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>abeja</orth>
  </form>
  <gramGrp>
    <gen>f. </gen>
  </gramGrp>

```

```

<sense n="1.">
  <usg type="domain"> (ento.) </usg>
  <def> bee </def>. </sense>
<sense n="2.">
  <def> busy bee, hard worker </def>. </sense>
<sense n="3.">
  <usg orig="A." type="domain"> (astron.) </usg>, <def> Musca </def> -
</sense>
<re>
  <form>
    <orth orig="a. albanila"> abeja albanila </orth>, </form>
  <sense>
    <def>mason bee</def>;</sense>
</re>
<re>
  <form>
    <orth orig="a. carpintera"> abeja carpintera </orth>, </form>
  <sense>
    <def>carpenter bee </def>;</sense>
</re>
<re>
  <form>
    <orth orig="a. reina or maestra" xml:id="re-o3"> abeja reina </orth>
    <orth mergedIn="#re-o4"> abeja maestra </orth>
  </form>
  <sense>
    <def> queen bee </def>;</sense>
</re>
<re>
  <form>
    <orth orig="a. neutra or obrera" xml:id="re-o4"> abeja neutra </orth>
    <orth mergedIn="#re-o3"> abeja obrera </orth>
  </form>
  <sense>
    <def>worker bee</def>.</sense>
</re>
</entry>

```

Example In the much larger Simon & Schuster Spanish-English dictionary (*Tana de Gámez, ed., Simon and Schuster's International Dictionary (New York: Simon and Schuster, 1973).*) these derived forms of *abeja* are treated as separate main entries, but there are other embedded phrases shown as <re>s in its main entry for *abeja*:

abeja, f. 1. (ento.) bee. 2. busy bee, hard worker. 3. (astron.) A., Musca.
 — a. albanila, mason bee; a. carpintera, carpenter bee; a. reina or maestra, queen bee; a. neutra or obrera, worker bee.

This entry may be encoded thus:

```

<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>abeja</orth>
  </form>
  <gramGrp>
    <gen>f.</gen>
  </gramGrp>
  <sense n="1.">
    <usg type="domain">(ento.)</usg>
    <def>bee</def>. </sense>
  <sense n="2.">
    <def>busy bee, hard worker</def>. </sense>

```

```
<sense n="3.">
  <usg orig="A." type="domain">(astron.)</usg>, <def>Musca</def> – </sense>
<re>
  <form>
    <orth orig="a. albanila">abeja albanila</orth>, </form>
  <sense>
    <def>mason bee</def>; </sense>
</re>
<re>
  <form>
    <orth orig="a. carpintera">abeja carpintera</orth>, </form>
  <sense>
    <def>carpenter bee</def>; </sense>
</re>
<re>
  <form>
    <orth orig="a. reina or maestra" xml:id="re-o1">abeja reina</orth>
    <orth mergedIn="#re-o1">abeja maestra</orth>
  </form>
  <sense>
    <def>queen bee</def>; </sense>
</re>
<re>
  <form>
    <orth orig="a. neutra or obrera" xml:id="re-o2">abeja neutra</orth>
    <orth mergedIn="#re-o2">abeja obrera</orth>
  </form>
  <sense>
    <def>worker bee</def>. </sense>
</re>
</entry>
```

Note May contain character data mixed with any other elements defined in the dictionary tag set. Identical in sub-elements to an <entry> tag, and used where a dictionary has embedded information inside one entry which could have formed a separate entry. Some authorities distinguish related entries, run-on entries, and various other types of degenerate entries; no such typology is attempted here.

<redo/> indicates one or more cancelled interventions in a document which have subsequently been marked as reaffirmed or repeated.

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.transcriptional (@hand, @status, @cause, @seq) (att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)))

@target points to one or more elements representing the interventions which are being reasserted.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of data.pointer separated by whitespace

Member of model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: cl pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: am damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element redo
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  att.transcriptional.attributes,
  attribute target { list { data.pointer+ } }?,
  empty
}
```

Example

```
<line>
  <redo cause="fix" hand="#g_t" target="#redo-1"/>
  <mod
    hand="#g_bl"
    rend="strikethrough"
    spanTo="#anchor-1"
    xml:id="redo-1"/>Ihr hagren, triften,
krummgezog<mod rend="strikethrough">nen</mod>ener Nacken
</line>
<line>Wenn ihr nur piepfet ift die Welt fchon
matt.<anchor xml:id="anchor-1"/>
</line>
```

This encoding represents the following sequence of events:

- "Ihr hagren, triften, krummgezog nenener Nacken/ Wenn ihr nur piepfet ift die Welt fchon matt." is written
- the redundant letters "nen" in "nenener" are deleted
- the whole passage is deleted by hand **g_bl** using **strikethrough**
- the deletion is reasserted by another hand (identified here as **g_t**)

<ref> (reference) defines a reference to another location, possibly modified by additional text or comment. [3.6. 16.1.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) att.pointing (*@targetLang*, *@target*, *@evaluate*) att.internetMedia (*@mimeType*) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.declaring (*@decls*) att.cReferencing (*@cRef*)

Member of model.ptrLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s span

core: abbr add addrLine analytic author bibl biblScope biblStruct cit citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned monogr name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg relatedItem resp rs said series sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figDesc notatedMusic

header: application authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage

iso-fs: fDescr fsDescr

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

element ref { att.global.attributes,
--


```
att.pointing.attributes,  
att.internetMedia.attributes,  
att.typed.attributes,  
att.declaring.attributes,  
att.cReferencing.attributes,  
macro.paraContent}
```

Schematron <s:report test="@target and @cRef">Only one of the attributes @target' and @cRef' may be supplied on <s:name/> </s:report>

Example

```
<ref  
  target="http://www.natcorp.ox.ac.uk/Texts/A02.xml#s2"> See especially the  
  second  
sentence</ref> See also <ref>s.v. <term>locution</term>  
</ref>.
```

Example

```
<ref  
  target="http://www.natcorp.ox.ac.uk/Texts/A02.xml#s2"> See especially the  
  second  
sentence</ref>
```

Example

```
See also <ref>s.v. <term>locution</term>  
</ref>.
```

Note The target and cRef attributes are mutually exclusive.

<refState/> (reference state) specifies one component of a canonical reference defined by the milestone method. [2.3.6.3. 2.3.6.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.milestoneUnit (@unit) att.edition (@ed, @edRef)

@length specifies the fixed length of the reference component.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.count`

Values If no value is provided, the length is unlimited and goes to the next delimiter or to the end of the value.

Note When constructing a reference, if the reference component found is of numeric type, the length is made up by inserting leading zeros; if it is not, by inserting trailing blanks. In either case, reference components are truncated if necessary at the right hand side. When seeking a reference, the length indicates the number of characters which should be compared. Values longer than this will be regarded as matching, if they start correctly.

@delim (delimiter) supplies a delimiting string following the reference component.

Status Optional

Datatype `text`

Values If a single space is used it is interpreted as whitespace.

Member of `Conf` contained by

header: `refsDecl`

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element refState
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.milestoneUnit.attributes,
  att.edition.attributes,
  attribute length { data.count }?,
  attribute delim { text }?,
  empty
}
```

Example

```
<refState delim=":" unit="book"/>
<refState length="4" unit="line"/>
```

<refsDecl> (references declaration) specifies how canonical references are constructed for this text. [2.3.6.3. 2.3. 2.3.6.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@rend`, `@style`, `@rendition`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) (`att.global.change` (`@change`)) `att.declarable` (`@default`)

Member of `model.encodingDescPart`

Contained by

header: `encodingDesc`

May contain

core: `p`

header: `cRefPattern` `refState`

linking: `ab`

Declaration

```
element refsDecl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | cRefPattern+ | refState+ )
}
```

Example

```
<refsDecl>
  <cRefPattern
    matchPattern="([A-Za-z0-9]+) ([0-9]+):([0-9]+)"
```

```
replacementPattern="#xpath(//body/div[@n='$1']/div[$2]/div3[$3])"/>
</refsDecl>
```

This example is a formal representation for the referencing scheme described informally in the following example.

Example

```
<refsDecl>
  <p>References are made up by concatenating the value for the
  <att>n</att> attribute on the highest level <gi>div</gi>
  element, followed by a space, followed by the sequential
  number of the next level <gi>div</gi> followed by a colon
  followed by the sequential number of the next (and lowest)
  level <gi>div</gi>.</p>
</refsDecl>
```

<reg> (regularization) contains a reading which has been regularized or normalized in some sense. [3.4.2. 12.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: cl pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: am damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element reg
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been regularized, <reg> may be used alone:

```
<q>Please <reg>knock</reg> if an <reg>answer</reg> is <reg>required</reg>
</q>
```

Example It is also possible to identify the individual responsible for the regularization, and, using the <choice> and <orig> elements, to provide both the original and regularized readings:

```
<q>Please <choice>
  <reg resp="#LB">knock</reg>
  <orig>cnk</orig>
</choice> if an <choice>
  <reg>answer</reg>
  <orig>nsr</orig>
</choice> is <choice>
  <reg>required</reg>
  <orig>reqd</orig>
</choice>
</q>
```

<relatedItem> contains or references some other bibliographic item which is related to the present one in some specified manner, for example as a constituent or alternative version of it. [3.11.2.6.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

@target points to the related bibliographic element by means of an absolute or relative URI reference

Status Optional

Datatype data.pointer

Member of model.biblPart

Contained by

core: bibl biblStruct

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct ptr ref

header: biblFull

Declaration

```
element relatedItem
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute target { data.pointer }?,
  ( model.biblLike | model.ptrLike )?
}
```

Schematron <sch:report test="@target and count(child::*) > 0">If the @target attribute on <sch:name/> is used, the relatedItem element must be empty</sch:report> <sch:assert test="@target or child::*">A relatedItem element should have either a 'target' attribute or a child element to indicate the related bibliographic item</sch:assert>

Example

```
<biblStruct>
  <monogr>
    <author>Shirley, James</author>
    <title type="main">The gentlemen of Venice</title>
    <imprint>
      <pubPlace>New York</pubPlace>
      <publisher>Readex Microprint</publisher>
      <date>1953</date>
    </imprint>
    <extent>1 microprint card, 23 x 15 cm.</extent>
  </monogr>
  <series>
    <title>Three centuries of drama: English, 1642–1700</title>
  </series>
  <relatedItem type="otherForm">
    <biblStruct>
      <monogr>
        <author>Shirley, James</author>
        <title type="main">The gentlemen of Venice</title>
        <title type="sub">a tragi-comedie presented at the private house in
Salisbury
          Court by Her Majesties servants</title>
        <imprint>
          <pubPlace>London</pubPlace>
          <publisher>H. Moseley</publisher>
          <date>1655</date>
        </imprint>
        <extent>78 p.</extent>
      </monogr>
    </biblStruct>
  </relatedItem>
</biblStruct>
```

Note If the target attribute is used to reference the related bibliographic item, the element should be empty.

<rendition> supplies information about the rendition or appearance of one or more elements in the source text. [2.3.4.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

@scheme identifies the language used to describe the rendition.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Legal values are: **css** Cascading Stylesheet Language

xslfo Extensible Stylesheet Language Formatting Objects

free Informal free text description

other A user-defined rendition description language

@scope where CSS is used, provides a way of defining ‘pseudo-elements’, that is, styling rules applicable to specific sub-portions of an element.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Sample values include: **first-line** styling applies to the first line of the target element

first-letter styling applies to the first letter of the target element

before styling should be applied immediately before the content of the target element

after styling should be applied immediately after the content of the target element

Member of

header: tagsDecl

May contain

core: abbr address bibl biblStruct choice cit date desc distinct email emph expan foreign gloss hi label list listBibl measure measureGrp mentioned name num ptr q quote ref rs said soCalled stage term time title

dictionaries: lang

figures: table

header: biblFull idno

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: am ex subst

Declaration

```
element rendition
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute scheme { "css" | "xslfo" | "free" | "other" }?,
  attribute scope { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.limitedContent}

```

Example

```

<tagsDecl>
  <rendition scheme="css" xml:id="r-center">text-align: center;</rendition>
  <rendition scheme="css" xml:id="r-small">font-size: small;</rendition>
  <rendition scheme="css" xml:id="r-large">font-size: large;</rendition>
  <rendition scheme="css" scope="first-letter" xml:id="initcaps">font-size:
xx-large</rendition>
</tagsDecl>

```

Note The present release of these Guidelines does not specify the content of this element in any further detail. It may be used to hold a description of the default rendition to be associated with the specified element, expressed in running prose, or in some more formal language such as CSS.

<resp> (responsibility) contains a phrase describing the nature of a person’s intellectual responsibility, or an organization’s role in the production or distribution of a work. [3.11.2.2. 2.2.1. 2.2.2. 2.2.5.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.canonical (@key, @ref)

Member of

Contained by

core: respStmt

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

dictionaries: lang

figures: figure notatedMusic

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

transcr: addSpan am damageSpan delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst substJoin

Declaration

```

element resp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}

```

Example

```

<respStmt>
  <resp key="com">compiler</resp>
  <name>Edward Child</name>
</respStmt>

```

Note The attributes `key` or `ref`, inherited from the class `att.canonical` may be used to indicate the kind of responsibility in a normalized form, by referring directly (using `ref`) or indirectly (using `key`) to a standardized list of responsibility types, such as that maintained by a naming authority, for example the list maintained at <http://www.loc.gov/marc/relators/relacode.html> for bibliographic usage.

<respStmt> (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in the production or distribution of a bibliographic work. [3.11.2.2. 2.2.1. 2.2.2. 2.2.5.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@rend`, `@style`, `@rendition`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) (`att.global.change` (`@change`))

Member of `model.respLike`

Contained by

core: `analytic` `bibl` `imprint` `monogr` `series`

header: `editionStmt` `seriesStmt` `titleStmt`

May contain

core: `name` `resp`

Declaration

```
element respStmt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( ( resp+, model.nameLike.agent+ ) | ( model.nameLike.agent+, resp+ ) )
}
```

Example

```
<respStmt>
  <resp>transcribed from original ms</resp>
  <persName>Claus Huitfeldt</persName>
</respStmt>
```

Example

```
<respStmt>
  <resp>converted to XML encoding</resp>
  <name>Alan Morrison</name>
</respStmt>
```

<restore> indicates restoration of text to an earlier state by cancellation of an editorial or authorial marking or instruction. [11.3.1.6.]

Module `transcr`

Attributes Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@rend`, `@style`, `@rendition`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`,

(*@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) att.transcriptional (*@hand*, *@status*, *@cause*, *@seq*) (att.editLike (*@evidence*, *@source*, *@instant*) (att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@precision*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*))) (att.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Member of model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: cl pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: am damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element restore
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.transcriptional.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```
For I hate this
<restore hand="#dhl" type="marginalStetNote">
```

```
<del>my</del>
</restore> body
```

Note On this element, the type attribute categorizes the way that the cancelled intervention has been indicated in some way, for example by means of a marginal note, over-inking, additional markup, etc.

<retrace> contains a sequence of writing which has been retraced, for example by over-inking, to clarify or fix it.

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) att.spanning (*@spanTo*) att.transcriptional (*@hand*, *@status*, *@cause*, *@seq*) (att.editLike (*@evidence*, *@source*, *@instant*) (att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@precision*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*))) (att.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)))

Member of model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: cl pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: am damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element retrace
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  att.transcriptional.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Note Multiple retraces are indicated by nesting one <retrace> within another. In principle, a retrace differs from a substitution in that second and subsequent rewrites do not materially alter the content of an element. Where minor changes have been made during the retracing action however these may be marked up using , <add>, etc. with an appropriate value for the change attribute.

<revisionDesc> (revision description) summarizes the revision history for a file. [2.5.2.1.1.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.docStatus (@status)

Member of

Contained by

header: teiHeader

May contain

core: list

header: change listChange

Declaration

```
element revisionDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.docStatus.attributes,
  ( list | listChange | change+ )
}

```

Example

```
<revisionDesc status="embargoed">
  <change when="1991-11-11" who="#LB"> deleted chapter 10 </change>
</revisionDesc>
```

Note If present on this element, the status attribute should indicate the current status of the document. The same attribute may appear on any <change> to record the status at the time of that change. Conventionally change elements should be given in reverse date order, with the most recent change at the start of the list.

<row> contains one row of a table. [14.1.1.]

Module figures

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.tableDecoration (@role, @rows, @cols)

Member of

Contained by

figures: table

May contain

figures: cell

Declaration

```
element row { att.global.attributes, att.tableDecoration.attributes, cell+ }
```

Example

```
<row role="data">
  <cell role="label">Classics</cell>
  <cell>Idle listless and unimproving</cell>
</row>
```

<rs> (referencing string) contains a general purpose name or referring string. [13.2.1.3.5.1.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.nameLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s span

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage

iso-fs: fDescr fsDescr

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```

element rs
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```

<q>My dear <rs type="person">Mr. Bennet</rs>, </q> said
<rs type="person">his lady</rs>
to him one day,
<q>have you heard that <rs type="place">Netherfield Park</rs> is let at
last?</q>

```

<S> (s-unit) contains a sentence-like division of a text. [17.1. 8.4.1.]

Module analysis

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition,
@xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf,
@next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs
(@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.segLike (@function) (att.datcat (@datcat,
@valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.segLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor
email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure
mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic
soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyp
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element s
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Schematron <s:report test="tei:s">You may not nest one s element within another: use
seg instead</s:report>

Example

```
<head>
  <s>A short affair</s>
</head>
<s>When are you leaving?</s>
<s>Tomorrow.</s>
```

Note The <s> element may be used to mark orthographic sentences, or any other
segmentation of a text, provided that the segmentation is end-to-end, complete, and
non-nesting. For segmentation which is partial or recursive, the <seg> should be
used instead. The type attribute may be used to indicate the type of segmentation
intended, according to any convenient typology.

<said> (speech or thought) indicates passages thought or spoken aloud, whether explicitly
indicated in the source or not, whether directly or indirectly reported, whether by
real people or fictional characters. [3.3.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition,
@xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf,
@next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs
(@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.ascribed (@who)

@aloud may be used to indicate whether the quoted matter is regarded as having
been vocalized or signed.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.xTruthValue`

Default unknown

```
<p> Celia thought privately, <said
  aloud="false">Dorothea quite despises Sir James Chettam;
  I believe she would not accept him.</said> Celia felt
  that this was a pity.
```

```
</p>
```

Note The value true indicates the encoded passage was expressed outwardly (whether spoken, signed, sung, screamed, chanted, etc.); the value false indicates that the encoded passage was thought, but not outwardly expressed.

@direct may be used to indicate whether the quoted matter is regarded as direct or indirect speech.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.xTruthValue`

Default true

```
<editorialDecl>
```

```
<quotation
```

```
  marks="none"/>
```

```
</editorialDecl>
```

```
<p> Tantripp had brought a card, and said that there was a
gentleman waiting in the lobby.
```

```
The courier had told him that <said
```

```
  direct="false">only Mrs. Casaubon was at home</said>,
but he said <said
```

```
  direct="false">he was a relation of Mr. Casaubon's:
would she see him?</said>
```

```
</p>
```

Note The value true indicates the speech or thought is represented directly; the value false that speech or thought is represented indirectly, e.g. by use of a marked verbal aspect.

Member of model.qLike

Contained by

core: add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyp h iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence rendition tagUsage

iso-fs: fDescr fsDescr

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript signed titlePart

transcr: damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

1 ELEMENTS

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element said
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  attribute aloud { data.xTruthValue }?,
  attribute direct { data.xTruthValue }?,
  macro.specialPara}

```

Example

```
<editorialDecl>
  <quotation marks="all"/>
</editorialDecl>
<p>
  <said>"Our minstrel here will warm the old man's heart with song, dazzle
him with jewels and
  gold"</said>, a troublemaker simpered. <said>"He'll trample on the
Duke's camellias, spill
  his wine, and blunt his sword, and say his name begins with X, and in
the end the Duke
  will say, <said>'Take Saralinda, with my blessing, O lordly Prince of
Rags and Tags, O
  rider of the sun!'"</said>"</said>
</p>

```

Example

```
<p>
  <said aloud="true" rend="pre(") post(")">Hmmm</said>, said a small voice
in his ear.
  <said aloud="true" rend="pre(") post(")">Difficult. Very difficult. Plenty
of courage, I see.
  Not a bad mind either. there's talent, oh my goodness, yes – and a nice
thirst to prove
  yourself, now that's interesting. ... So where shall I put you?</said>
</p>
<p>Harry gripped the edges of the stool and thought,
  <said aloud="false" rend="italic">Not
  Slytherin, not Slytherin</said>.</p>

```

<salute> (salutation) contains a salutation or greeting prefixed to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text, or the salutation in the closing of a letter, preface, etc. [4.2.2.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.divWrapper

Contained by

core: lg list

figures: table

textstructure: body closer div group opener

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element salute { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example

```
<salute>To all courteous mindes, that will vouchsafe the readinge.</salute>
```

<salute> (salute declaration) contains a prose description of the rationale and methods used in sampling texts in the creation of a corpus or collection. [2.3.2. 2.3. 15.3.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.declarable (@default)

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

Declaration

```
element saluteDecl  
{
```

```
att.global.attributes,  
att.declarable.attributes,  
model.pLike+  
}
```

Example

```
<samplingDecl>  
  <p>Samples of up to 2000 words taken at random from the beginning, middle,  
  or end of each  
  text identified as relevant by respondents.</p>  
</samplingDecl>
```

Note This element records all information about systematic inclusion or omission of portions of the text, whether a reflection of sampling procedures in the pure sense or of systematic omission of material deemed either too difficult to transcribe or not of sufficient interest.

<seg> (arbitrary segment) represents any segmentation of text below the ‘chunk’ level.
[16.3. 6.2. 7.2.5.]

Module linking

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.segLike (@function) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)

Member of model.choicePart model.segLike

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyp h iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g
header: biblFull idno
iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib
linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline
textstructure: floatingText
transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element seg
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.responsibility.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```
<seg>When are you leaving?</seg>
<seg>Tomorrow.</seg>
```

Example

```
<s>
  <seg rend="caps" type="initial-cap">So father's only</seg> glory was the
  ballfield.
</s>
```

Example

```
<seg type="preamble">
  <seg>Sigmund, <seg type="patronym">the son of Volsung</seg>, was a king in
  Frankish country.</seg>
  <seg>Sinfiotli was the eldest of his sons ...</seg>
  <seg>Borghild, Sigmund's wife, had a brother ... </seg>
</seg>
```

Note The <seg> element may be used at the encoder's discretion to mark any segments of the text of interest for processing. One use of the element is to mark text features for which no appropriate markup is otherwise defined. Another use is to provide an identifier for some segment which is to be pointed at by some other element—i.e. to provide a target, or a part of a target, for a <ptr> or other similar element.

<segmentation> describes the principles according to which the text has been segmented, for example into sentences, tone-units, graphemic strata, etc. [2.3.3. 15.3.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.declarable (@default)

Member of model.editorialDeclPart

Contained by

header: editorialDecl

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

Declaration

```

element segmentation
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  model.pLike+
}

```

Example

```

<segmentation>
  <p>
    <gi>s</gi> elements mark orthographic sentences and are numbered
    sequentially within
    their parent <gi>div</gi> element </p>
  </segmentation>

```

Example

```

<p>
  <gi>seg</gi> elements are used to mark functional constituents of various
  types within each
  <gi>s</gi>; the typology used is defined by a <gi>taxonomy</gi> element in
  the corpus
  header <gi>classDecl</gi>
</p>

```

<sense> groups together all information relating to one word sense in a dictionary entry, for example definitions, examples, and translation equivalents. [9.2.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))

@level gives the nesting depth of this sense.

Status Optional

Datatype data.count

Member of model.entryPart

Contained by

core: cit

dictionaries: dictScrap entry entryFree hom re sense

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del distinct email emph
 expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

dictionaries: def dictScrap etym form gramGrp lang oRef oVar pRef pVar re sense usg xr
figures: figure formula notatedMusic
gaiji: g
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib
linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline
transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
 metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```

element sense
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  attribute level { data.count }?,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | sense      | model.entryPart.top   | model.phrase      | model.global
  )
}

```

Example

```

<sense n="2">
  <usg type="time">Vx.</usg>
  <def>Vaillance, bravoure (spécial., au combat)</def>
  <cit type="example">
    <quote>La valeur n'attend pas le nombre des années</quote>
    <bibl>
      <author>Corneille</author>
    </bibl>
  </cit>
</sense>

```

Note May contain character data mixed with any other elements defined in the dictionary tag set.

<series> (series information) contains information about the series in which a book or other bibliographic item has appeared. [3.11.2.1.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.biblPart

Contained by

core: bibl biblStruct

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: biblScope cb editor gap gb index lb milestone note pb ref respStmt textLang title

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

1 ELEMENTS

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

transcr: addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

Declaration

```
element series
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike    | title    | ref    | editor    | respStmt    | biblScope    | idno
  )
}
```

Example

```
<series xml:lang="de">
  <title level="s">Halbgraue Reihe zur Historischen Fachinformatik</title>
  <respStmt>
    <resp>Herausgegeben von</resp>
    <name type="person">Manfred Thaller</name>
    <name type="org">Max-Planck-Institut für Geschichte</name>
  </respStmt>
  <title level="s">Serie A: Historische Quellenkunden</title>
  <biblScope>Band 11</biblScope>
</series>
```

<seriesStmt> (series statement) groups information about the series, if any, to which a publication belongs. [2.2.5. 2.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of

Contained by

header: biblFull fileDesc

May contain

core: biblScope editor p respStmt title

header: idno

linking: ab

Declaration

```
element seriesStmt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( title+, ( editor | respStmt )*, ( idno | biblScope )* ) )
}
```

Example

```
<seriesStmt>
  <title>Machine-Readable Texts for the Study of Indian Literature</title>
  <respStmt>
```

```
<resp>ed. by</resp>
<name>Jan Gonda</name>
</respStmt>
<biblScope unit="vol">1.2</biblScope>
<idno type="ISSN">0 345 6789</idno>
</seriesStmt>
```

<setting> describes one particular setting in which a language interaction takes place. [15.2.3.]

Module corpus

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.ascribed (@who)

Member of

Contained by

corpus: settingDesc

May contain

core: date name p time

corpus: activity locale

linking: ab

Declaration

```
element setting
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  (
    model.pLike+
    | ( model.nameLike.agent | model.dateLike | model.settingPart )*
  )
}
```

Example

```
<setting>
  <name>New York City, US</name>
  <date>1989</date>
  <locale>on a park bench</locale>
  <activity>feeding birds</activity>
</setting>
```

Note If the who attribute is not supplied, the setting is assumed to be that of all participants in the language interaction.

<settingDesc> (setting description) describes the setting or settings within which a language interaction takes place, either as a prose description or as a series of setting elements. [15.2. 2.4.]

Module corpus

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.declarable (@default)

Member of model.profileDescPart

Contained by

header: profileDesc

May contain

core: p

corpus: setting

linking: ab

Declaration

```
element settingDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( setting | model.placeLike | listPlace )+ )
}
```

Example

```
<settingDesc>
  <p>Texts recorded in the Canadian Parliament building
    in Ottawa, between April and November 1988
  </p>
</settingDesc>
```

Note May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a series of <setting> elements.

<sic> (Latin for thus or so) contains text reproduced although apparently incorrect or inaccurate. [3.4.1.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: cl pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: am damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr
q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element sic
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.responsibility.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```
for his nose was as sharp as
a pen, and <sic>a Table</sic> of green fields.
```

Example If all that is desired is to call attention to the apparent problem in the copy text, <sic> may be used alone:

```
I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now
– how <sic>we can</sic> prove or disprove anyone's theories?
```

Example It is also possible, using the <choice> and <corr> elements, to provide a corrected reading:

```
I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now
– how <choice>
  <sic>we can</sic>
  <corr>can we</corr>
</choice> prove or disprove anyone's theories?
```

Example

```
for his nose was as sharp as
a pen, and <choice>
  <sic>a Table</sic>
  <corr>a' babbld</corr>
</choice> of green fields.
```

<signed> (signature) contains the closing salutation, etc., appended to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text. [4.2.2.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.divBottomPart

Contained by

core: lg list

figures: figure table

textstructure: back body closer div front group opener postscript

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element signed { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

Example

```
<signed>Thine to command <name>Humph. Moseley</name>
</signed>
```

Example

```
<closer>
  <signed>Sign'd and Seal'd,
  <list>
    <item>John Bull,</item>
    <item>Nic. Frog.</item>
  </list>
</signed>
</closer>
```

<soCalled> contains a word or phrase for which the author or narrator indicates a disclaiming of responsibility, for example by the use of scare quotes or italics. [3.3.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))

Member of model.emphLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s span

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyp h iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage

iso-fs: fDescr fsDescr

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element soCalled { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example

To edge his way along
the crowded paths of life, warning all human sympathy to keep its distance,
was what the
knowing ones call <soCalled>nuts</soCalled> to Scrooge.

<sourceDesc> (source description) describes the source from which an electronic text was derived or generated, typically a bibliographic description in the case of a digitized text, or a phrase such as "born digital" for a text which has no previous existence. [2.2.7.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.declarable (@default)

Member of

Contained by

header: biblFull fileDesc

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct list listBibl p

figures: table

header: biblFull

linking: ab

Declaration

```
element sourceDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  (
    model.pLike+
    | ( model.biblLike | model.sourceDescPart | model.listLike )+
  )
}
```

Example

```
<sourceDesc>
  <bibl>
    <title level="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the
Wood</title>. In
    <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>, <title>The Penny Histories</title>.
    <publisher>OUP</publisher>
    <date>1968</date>. </bibl>
  </sourceDesc>
```

Example

```
<sourceDesc>
  <p>Born digital: no previous source exists.</p>
</sourceDesc>
```

<sourceDoc> contains a transcription or other representation of a single source document potentially forming part of a *dossier génétique* or collection of sources.

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.declaring (@decls)

Member of model.resourceLike

Contained by

textstructure: TEI

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: binaryObject cb gap gb graphic index lb media milestone note pb

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

transcr: addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin
surface surfaceGrp

Declaration

```

element sourceDoc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  ( ( model.global | model.graphicLike | surface | surfaceGrp )+ )
}

```

Example

```

<sourceDoc>
  <surfaceGrp n="leaf1">
    <surface facs="page1.png">
      <zone>All the writing on page 1</zone>
    </surface>
    <surface>
      <graphic url="page2-highRes.png"/>
      <graphic url="page2-lowRes.png"/>
      <zone>
        <line>A line of writing on page 2</line>
        <line>Another line of writing on page 2</line>
      </zone>
    </surface>
  </surfaceGrp>
</sourceDoc>

```

Note This element may be used as an alternative to <facsimile> for TEI documents containing only page images, or for documents containing both images and transcriptions. Transcriptions may be provided within the <surface> elements making up a source document, in parallel with them as part of a <text> element, or in both places if the encoder wishes to distinguish these two modes of transcription.

<sp> (speech) contains an individual speech in a performance text, or a passage presented as such in a prose or verse text. [3.12.2. 3.12. 7.2.2.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.ascribed (@who)

Member of model.divPart

Contained by

core: item note q quote said stage

figures: figure

header: change handNote licence

textstructure: argument body div epigraph postscript

transcr: metamark

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: cb cit gap gb index l lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q quote said speaker stage

figures: figure notatedMusic table

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

Declaration

```

element sp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  (
    model.global*,
    ( speaker, model.global* )?,
    (
      (
        lg          | model.lLike          | model.pLike          | model.listLike
        model.global*
      )+
    )
  )
}

```

Example

```

<sp>
  <speaker>The reverend Doctor Opimian</speaker>
  <p>I do not think I have named a single unrepresentable fish.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>Mr Gryll</speaker>
  <p>Bream, Doctor: there is not much to be said for bream.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>The Reverend Doctor Opimian</speaker>
  <p>On the contrary, sir, I think there is much to be said for him. In the
  first place....</p>
  <p>Fish, Miss Gryll – I could discourse to you on fish by the hour: but
  for the present I
  will forbear...</p>
</sp>

```

Note The who attribute on this element may be used either in addition to the <speaker> element or as an alternative.

Note Lines or paragraphs, stage directions, and phrase-level elements. The who attribute on this element may be used either in addition to the <speaker> element or as an alternative.

<space> indicates the location of a significant space in the copy text. [11.5.1.]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))
@dim (dimension) indicates whether the space is horizontal or vertical.

Status Recommended

Datatype data.enumerated

Legal values are: **horizontal** the space is horizontal.

vertical the space is vertical.

Note For irregular shapes in two dimensions, the value for this attribute should reflect the more important of the two dimensions. In conventional left-right scripts, a space with both vertical and horizontal components should be classed as vertical.

@resp (responsible party) indicates the individual responsible for identifying and measuring the space.

Status Optional

Datatype data.pointer

Values a pointer to one of the identifiers typically but not necessarily declared in the current document header, associated with a person asserted as responsible for some aspect of the text's creation, transcription, editing, or encoding

Member of model.global.edit

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal sponsor

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain

core: desc

Declaration

```
element space
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dimensions.attributes,
  attribute dim { "horizontal" | "vertical" }?,
  attribute resp { data.pointer }?,
  ( model.descLike | model.certLike )*
}
```

Example

```
By god if wommen had writen storyes
As <space quantity="7" unit="minims"/> han within her oratoryes
```

Example

```
στρατηλάτ<space quantity="1" unit="chars"/>ου
```

Note This element should be used wherever it is desired to record an unusual space in the source text, e.g. space left for a word to be filled in later, for later rubrication, etc. It is not intended to be used to mark normal inter-word space or the like.

**** associates an interpretative annotation directly with a span of text. [17.3.]

Module analysis

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.interpLike (@type, @inst) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate)

@from gives the identifier of the node which is the starting point of the span of text being annotated; if not accompanied by a to attribute, gives the identifier of the node of the entire span of text being annotated.

Status Optional

Datatype data.pointer

Values The identifier of the element which occurs at the beginning of the passage.

@to gives the identifier of the node which is the end-point of the span of text being annotated.

Status Optional

Datatype data.pointer

Values The identifier of the element which occurs at the end of the passage.

Member of model.global.meta

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal sponsor

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

dictionaries: lang

figures: figure notatedMusic

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

transcr: addSpan am damageSpan delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst substJoin

Declaration

```

element span
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.interpLike.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  attribute from { data.pointer }?,
  attribute to { data.pointer }?,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}

```

Schematron <s:report test="@from and @target">Only one of the attributes @target and @from may be supplied on <s:name/> </s:report>

Schematron <s:report test="@to and @target">Only one of the attributes @target and @to may be supplied on <s:name/> </s:report>

Schematron <s:report test="@to and not(@from)">If @to is supplied on <s:name/>, @from must be supplied as well</s:report>

Schematron <s:report test="contains(@to,' ') or contains(@from,')">The attributes @to and @from on <s:name/> may each contain only a single value</s:report>

Example

```

<p xml:id="para2">(The "aftermath" starts here)</p>
<p xml:id="para3">(The "aftermath" continues here)</p>
<p xml:id="para4">(The "aftermath" ends in this paragraph)</p>
<span from="#para2" to="#para4" type="structure">aftermath</span>

```

<spanGrp> (span group) collects together span tags. [17.3.]

Module analysis

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.interpLike (@type, @inst) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

Member of model.global.meta

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal sponsor

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain

analysis: span

Declaration

```
element spanGrp { att.global.attributes, att.interpLike.attributes, span* }
```

Example

```
<u xml:id="UU1">Can I have ten oranges and a kilo of bananas please?</u>
<u xml:id="UU2">Yes, anything else?</u>
<u xml:id="UU3">No thanks.</u>
<u xml:id="UU4">That'll be dollar forty.</u>
<u xml:id="UU5">Two dollars</u>
<u xml:id="UU6">Sixty, eighty, two dollars.
<anchor xml:id="UU6e"/>Thank you.<anchor xml:id="UU6f"/>
</u>
<spanGrp type="transactions">
  <span from="#UU1">sale request</span>
  <span from="#UU2" to="#UU3">sale compliance</span>
  <span from="#UU4">sale</span>
  <span from="#UU5" to="#UU6">purchase</span>
```

```
<span from="#UU6e" to="#UU6f">purchase closure</span>
</spanGrp>
```

<speaker> contains a specialized form of heading or label, giving the name of one or more speakers in a dramatic text or fragment. [3.12.2.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of

Contained by

core: sp

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element speaker { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example

```
<sp who="#ni #rsa">
  <speaker>Nancy and Robert</speaker>
  <stage type="delivery">(speaking simultaneously)</stage>
  <p>The future? ...</p>
</sp>
<list type="speakers">
  <item xml:id="ni"/>
  <item xml:id="rsa"/>
</list>
```

<sponsor> specifies the name of a sponsoring organization or institution. [2.2.1.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf,

@next, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))

Member of model.respLike

Contained by

core: bibl monogr

header: editionStmt titleStmt

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

dictionaries: lang

figures: figure notatedMusic

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

transcr: addSpan am damageSpan delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst substJoin

Declaration

```
element sponsor { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq.limited }
```

Example

```
<sponsor>Association for Computers and the Humanities</sponsor>  
<sponsor>Association for Computational Linguistics</sponsor>  
<sponsor>Association for Literary and Linguistic Computing</sponsor>
```

Note Sponsors give their intellectual authority to a project; they are to be distinguished from *funders*, who provide the funding but do not necessarily take intellectual responsibility.

<stage> (stage direction) contains any kind of stage direction within a dramatic text or fragment. [3.12.2. 3.12. 7.2.4.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))

@type indicates the kind of stage direction.

Status Recommended

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Suggested values include: **setting** describes a setting.

entrance describes an entrance.

exit describes an exit.

business describes stage business.

novelistic is a narrative, motivating stage direction.

delivery describes how a character speaks.

modifier gives some detail about a character.

location describes a location.

mixed more than one of the above

Member of model.stageLike

Contained by

core: add corr del desc emph head hi item l lg meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic
sp stage title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph
iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence rendition tagUsage

iso-fs: fDescr fsDescr

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript signed
titlePart

transcr: damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb
ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element stage
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type
  {
    "setting"
    | "entrance"
    | "exit"
    | "business"
    | "novelistic"
    | "delivery"
    | "modifier"
    | "location"
    | "mixed"
    | xsd:Name
  }?,
  macro.specialPara}

```

Example

```
<stage type="setting">A curtain being drawn.</stage>
<stage type="setting">Music</stage>
<stage type="entrance">Enter Husband as being thrown off his horse.</stage>
<stage type="exit">Exit pursued by a bear.</stage>
<stage type="business">He quickly takes the stone out.</stage>
<stage type="delivery">To Lussurioso.</stage>
<stage type="novelistic">Having had enough, and embarrassed for the
family.</stage>
<stage type="modifier">Disguised as Ansaldo.</stage>
<stage type="location">At a window.</stage>
<stage rend="inline" type="delivery">Aside.</stage>
```

<stdVals> (standard values) specifies the format used when standardized date or number values are supplied. [2.3.3. 15.3.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.declarable (@default)

Member of model.editorialDeclPart

Contained by

header: editorialDecl

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

Declaration

```
element stdVals
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  model.pLike+
}
```

Example

```
<stdVals>
<p>All integer numbers are left-filled with zeroes to 8 digits.</p>
</stdVals>
```

<street> contains a full street address including any name or number identifying a building as well as the name of the street or route on which it is located. [3.5.2.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.addrPart

Contained by

core: address

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element street { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example

```
<street>via della Faggiola, 36</street>
```

Example

```
<street>  
  <name>Duntaggin</name>, 110 Southmoor Road  
</street>
```

Note The order and presentation of house names and numbers and street names, etc., may vary considerably in different countries. The encoding should reflect the order which is appropriate in the country concerned.

<stress> contains the stress pattern for a dictionary headword, if given separately. [9.3.1.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.formPart

Contained by

dictionaries: form

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element stress { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

Example

```
<form>
  <orth>alternating current</orth>
  <stress>,...'..</stress>
</form>
```

Note Usually stress information is included within pronunciation information.

<string> (string value) represents the value part of a feature-value specification which contains a string. [18.3.]

Module iso-fs

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)

Member of model.featureVal.single

Contained by

iso-fs: f fvLib if vAlt vColl vDefault vLabel vMerge vNot vRange

May contain

gaiji: g

Declaration

```
element string { att.global.attributes, att.datcat.attributes, macro.xtext }
```

Example

```
<f name="greeting">
  <string>Hello, world!</string>
</f>
```

<styleDefDecl> (style definition language declaration) specifies the name of the formal language in which style or renditional information is supplied elsewhere in the document. [2.3.5.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf,

@next, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) att.declarable (*@default*) att.styleDef (*@scheme*)

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

Declaration

```

element styleDefDecl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.styleDef.attributes,
  model.pLike*
}

```

Example

```

<styleDefDecl scheme="css"/>
<tagsDecl>
  <rendition xml:id="boldface">font-weight: bold;</rendition>
  <rendition xml:id="italicstyle">font-style: italic;</rendition>
</tagsDecl>

```

<subc> (subcategorization) contains subcategorization information
(transitive/intransitive, countable/non-countable, etc.) [9.3.2.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) att.lexicographic (*@expand*, *@norm*, *@split*, *@value*, *@orig*, *@location*, *@mergedIn*, *@opt*) (att.datcat (*@datcat*, *@valueDatcat*))

Member of model.entryPart model.gramPart

Contained by

core: cit

dictionaries: dictScrap entryFree form gramGrp

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element subc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}
```

Example

```
<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>médire</orth>
  </form>
  <gramGrp>
    <subc>t ind</subc>
  </gramGrp>
</entry>
```

<subst> (substitution) groups one or more deletions with one or more additions when the combination is to be regarded as a single intervention in the text.

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.transcriptional (@hand, @status, @cause, @seq) (att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant)) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope)) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)))

Member of model.pPart.editorial

Contained by

analysis: cl pc phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyp h iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage

iso-fs: fDescr fsDescr

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

May contain

core: add cb del gb lb milestone pb

linking: anchor

transcr: fw

Declaration

```
element subst
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.transcriptional.attributes,
  ( add | del | model.milestoneLike )+
}
```

Schematron <s:assert test="child::tei:add and child::tei:del"> <s:name/> must have at least one child add and at least one child del</s:assert>

Example

```
... are all included. <del hand="#RG">It is</del>
<subst>
  <add>T</add>
  <del>t</del>
</subst>he expressed
```

Example

```
that he and his Sister Mifs D - <lb/>who always lived with him, wd. be
<subst>
  <del>very</del>
  <lb/>
  <add>principally</add>
</subst> remembered in her Will.
```

Example

```
<ab>τ<subst>
  <add place="above">ῶν</add>
  <del>α</del>
</subst>
συγκυρόντ<subst>
  <add place="above">ων</add>
  <del>α</del>
</subst>
ἐργαστηρί<subst>
  <add place="above">ων</add>
  <del>α</del>
</subst>
</ab>
```

Example

```
<subst>
  <del>
    <gap quantity="5" reason="illegible" unit="character"/>
  </del>
```

```
<add>apple</add>
</subst>
```

<substJoin> (substitution join) identifies a series of possibly fragmented additions, deletions or other revisions on a manuscript that combine to make up a single intervention in the text

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) att.pointing (*@targetLang*, *@target*, *@evaluate*) att.transcriptional (*@hand*, *@status*, *@cause*, *@seq*) (att.editLike (*@evidence*, *@source*, *@instant*) (att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@precision*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*))) (att.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)))

Member of model.global.meta

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal sponsor

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain

core: desc

Declaration

```
element substJoin
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.transcriptional.attributes,
  ( model.descLike | model.certLike )*
}
```

Example

```
While <del xml:id="r112">pondering</del> thus <add xml:id="r113">she  
mus'd</add>, her pinions fann'd  
<substJoin target="#r112 #r113"/>
```

<superEntry> groups a sequence of entries within any kind of lexical resource, such as a dictionary or lexicon which function as a single unit, for example a set of homographs. [9.1.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.entryLike (@type) att.sortable (@sortKey)

Member of model.entryLike model.entryPart

Contained by

core: cit

dictionaries: dictScrap entryFree

figures: figure

textstructure: argument body div epigraph postscript

May contain

dictionaries: dictScrap entry form

Declaration

```
element superEntry  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  att.entryLike.attributes,  
  att.sortable.attributes,  
  ( ( form?, entry+ ) | dictScrap )  
}
```

Example

```
<superEntry>  
  <form>  
    <orth>abandon</orth>  
    <hyph>a|ban|don</hyph>  
    <pron>@"band@n</pron>  
  </form>  
  <entry n="1">  
    <gramGrp>  
      <pos>v</pos>  
      <subc>T1</subc>  
    </gramGrp>  
    <sense n="1">  
      <def>to leave completely and for ever ... </def>  
    </sense>  
    <sense n="2"/>  
  </entry>  
  <entry n="2">  
    <gramGrp>  
      <pos>n</pos>  
      <subc>U</subc>
```

```

    </gramGrp>
    <def>the state when one's feelings and actions are uncontrolled; freedom
from
    control</def>
    </entry>
</superEntry>

```

<supplied> signifies text supplied by the transcriber or editor for any reason, typically because the original cannot be read because of physical damage or loss to the original. [11.3.3.1.]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

Ⓒreason indicates why the text has had to be supplied.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.word` separated by whitespace

Values any phrase describing the difficulty, e.g. *overbinding*, *faded-ink*, *lost-folio*, *omitted-in-original*.

Member of model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: cl pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: am damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno
iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib
linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline
textstructure: floatingText
transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element supplied
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  attribute reason { list { data.word+ } }?,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```
I am dr Sr yr
<supplied reason="illegible" source="#amanuensis_copy">very humble
Servt</supplied>
Sydney Smith

```

Note The <damage>, <gap>, , <unclear> and <supplied> elements may be closely allied in use. See section 11.3.3.2. for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.

<surface> defines a written surface as a two-dimensional coordinate space, optionally grouping one or more graphic representations of that space, zones of interest within that space, and transcriptions of the writing within them.

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.coordinated (@start, @ulx, @uly, @lrx, @lry) att.declaring (@decls) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

@attachment describes the method by which this surface is or was connected to the main surface

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Sample values include: **glued** glued in place

pinned pinned or stapled in place

sewn sewn in place

@flipping indicates whether the surface is attached and folded in such a way as to provide two writing surfaces

Status Optional

Datatype `data.truthValue`

Member ~~Contained~~ by

transcr: facsimile sourceDoc surface surfaceGrp zone

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp
core: binaryObject cb desc gap gb graphic index label lb media milestone note pb
figures: figure formula notatedMusic
iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib
linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline
transcr: addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw line listTranspose metamark space substJoin
 surface surfaceGrp zone

Declaration

```

element surface
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.coordinated.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute attachment { data.enumerated }?,
  attribute flipping { data.truthValue }?,
  (
    ( model.global | model.labelLike | model.graphicLike )*,
    ( ( zone | line | surface | surfaceGrp ), model.global* )*)
}

```

Example

```

<facsimile>
  <surface
    lrx="200"
    lry="300"
    ulx="0"
    uly="0">
    <graphic url="Bovelles-49r.png"/>
  </surface>
</facsimile>

```

Note The <surface> element represents any two-dimensional space on some physical surface forming part of the source material, such as a piece of paper, a face of a monument, a billboard, a scroll, a leaf etc. The coordinate space defined by this element may be thought of as a grid lrx - ulx units wide and uly - lry units high. The <surface> element may contain graphic representations or transcriptions of written zones, or both. The coordinate values used by every <zone> element contained by this element are to be understood with reference to the same grid. Where it is useful or meaningful to do so, any grouping of multiple <surface> elements may be indicated using the <surfaceGrp> elements.

<surfaceGrp> defines any kind of useful grouping of written surfaces, for example the recto and verso of a single leaf, which the encoder wishes to treat as a single unit.

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.coordinated (@start, @ulx, @uly, @lrx, @lry) att.declaring (@decls) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of

Contained by

transcr: facsimile sourceDoc surface surfaceGrp

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: cb gap gb index lb milestone note pb

figures: figure notatedMusic

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

transcr: addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin
surface surfaceGrp

Declaration

```
element surfaceGrp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.coordinated.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( model.global | surface | surfaceGrp )+
}
```

Example

```
<sourceDoc>
  <surfaceGrp>
    <surface
      lrx="200"
      lry="300"
      ulx="0"
      uly="0">
      <graphic url="Bovelles-49r.png"/>
    </surface>
    <surface
      lrx="200"
      lry="300"
      ulx="0"
      uly="0">
      <graphic url="Bovelles-49v.png"/>
    </surface>
  </surfaceGrp>
</sourceDoc>
```

Note Where it is useful or meaningful to do so, any grouping of multiple <surface> elements may be indicated using the <surfaceGrp> elements.

<surplus> marks text present in the source which the editor believes to be superfluous or redundant. [11.3.3.1.]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

@reason indicates the grounds for believing this text to be superfluous.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.word` separated by whitespace

Values any word describing the difficulty, e.g. *repeated*, *interpolated* etc.

Member of model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: cl pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: am damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```

element surplus
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  attribute reason { list { data.word+ } }?,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```

I am dr Sr yrs
<surplus reason="repeated">yrs</surplus>
Sydney Smith

```

<syll> (syllabification) contains the syllabification of the headword. [9.3.1.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))

Member of model.entryPart model.formPart

Contained by

core: cit

dictionaries: dictScrap entryFree form

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```

element syll
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```

<form>
  <orth>area</orth>
  <hyph>ar|ea</hyph>
  <syll>ar|e|a</syll>
</form>

```

<symbol/> (symbolic value) represents the value part of a feature-value specification which contains one of a finite list of symbols. [18.3.]

Module iso-fs

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)

@value supplies the symbolic value for the feature, one of a finite list that may be specified in a feature declaration.

Status Required

Datatype `data.word`

Values A string, e.g. *feminine*.

Member of model.featureVal.single

Contained by

iso-fs: f fvLib if vAlt vColl vDefault vLabel vMerge vNot vRange

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element symbol
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.datcat.attributes,
  attribute value { data.word },
  empty
}
```

Example

```
<f name="gender">
  <symbol value="feminine"/>
</f>
```

<table> contains text displayed in tabular form, in rows and columns. [14.1.1.]

Module figures

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))

@rows indicates the number of rows in the table.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.count`

Values If no number is supplied, an application must calculate the number of rows.

Note Rows should be presented from top to bottom.

@cols (columns) indicates the number of columns in each row of the table.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.count`

Values If no number is supplied, an application must calculate the number of columns.

Note Within each row, columns should be presented left to right.

Member of model.listLike

Contained by

core: add corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figDesc figure
header: change handNote licence rendition sourceDesc tagUsage
iso-fs: fDescr fsDescr
linking: ab seg
textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript signed titlePart
transcr: damage metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus
May contain
analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp
core: binaryObject cb gap gb graphic head index lb media meeting milestone note pb
figures: figure formula notatedMusic row
iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib
linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline
textstructure: argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph postscript salute signed trailer
transcr: addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin
Declaration

```

element table
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute rows { data.count }?,
  attribute cols { data.count }?,
  (
    ( model.headLike | model.global )*,
    ( ( row, model.global* )+ | ( ( model.graphicLike ), model.global* )+ ),
    ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
  )
}

```

Example

```

<table cols="4" rows="4">
  <head>Poor Men's Lodgings in Norfolk (Mayhew, 1843)</head>
  <row role="label">
    <cell role="data"/>
    <cell role="data">Dossing Cribs or Lodging Houses</cell>
    <cell role="data">Beds</cell>
    <cell role="data">Needys or Nightly Lodgers</cell>
  </row>
  <row role="data">
    <cell role="label">Bury St Edmund's</cell>
    <cell role="data">5</cell>
    <cell role="data">8</cell>
    <cell role="data">128</cell>
  </row>
  <row role="data">
    <cell role="label">Thetford</cell>
    <cell role="data">3</cell>
    <cell role="data">6</cell>
    <cell role="data">36</cell>
  </row>
  <row role="data">
    <cell role="label">Attleboro'</cell>
    <cell role="data">3</cell>
    <cell role="data">5</cell>
  </row>
</table>

```

```
<cell role="data">20</cell>
</row>
<row role="data">
  <cell role="label">Wymondham</cell>
  <cell role="data">1</cell>
  <cell role="data">11</cell>
  <cell role="data">22</cell>
</row>
</table>
```

Note Contains an optional heading and a series of rows. Any rendition information should be supplied using the global `rend` attribute, at the table, row, or cell level as appropriate.

<tagUsage> supplies information about the usage of a specific element within a text.
[2.3.4.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@rend`, `@style`, `@rendition`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) (`att.global.change` (`@change`))

@gi (element name) specifies the name (generic identifier) of the element indicated by the tag.

Status Required

Datatype `data.name`

Values the name of an element within the namespace indicated by the parent `<namespace>` element

@occurs specifies the number of occurrences of this element within the text.

Status Recommended

Datatype `data.count`

@withId (with unique identifier) specifies the number of occurrences of this element within the text which bear a distinct value for the global `xml:id` attribute.

Status Recommended

Datatype `data.count`

@render specifies the identifier of a `<rendition>` element which defines how this element was rendered in the source text.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Values an identifier specified as the value of the `xml:id` attribute on some `<rendition>` element typically but not necessarily in the current document.

Member of `Confined by`

header: namespace

May contain

core: abbr address bibl biblStruct choice cit date desc distinct email emph expan foreign

gloss hi label list listBibl measure measureGrp mentioned name num ptr q quote ref
rs said soCalled stage term time title

dictionaries: lang

figures: table

header: biblFull idno

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: am ex subst

Declaration

```
element tagUsage
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute gi { data.name },
  attribute occurs { data.count }?,
  attribute withId { data.count }?,
  attribute render { list { data.pointer+ } }?,
  macro.limitedContent
}
```

Example

```
<tagsDecl>
  <rendition xml:id="it">Render using a slant or italic variant on the
current font</rendition>
  <namespace name="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
    <tagUsage
      gi="hi"
      occurs="28"
      render="#it"
      withId="2"> Used to mark English words
        italicized in the copy text.</tagUsage>
    <tagUsage gi="foreign" render="#it">Used to mark non-English words in the
copy text.</tagUsage>
  </namespace>
</tagsDecl>
```

<tagsDecl> (tagging declaration) provides detailed information about the tagging applied to a document. [2.3.4. 2.3.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

header: namespace rendition

Declaration

```
element tagsDecl { att.global.attributes, ( rendition*, namespace* ) }
```

Example

```

<tagsDecl>
  <rendition xml:id="rend-it">to be rendered in italic font</rendition>
  <namespace name="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
    <tagUsage gi="hi" occurs="467" render="#rend-it"/>
    <tagUsage gi="title" occurs="45" render="#rend-it"/>
  </namespace>
  <namespace name="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook">
    <tagUsage gi="para" occurs="10"/>
  </namespace>
</tagsDecl>

```

<taxonomy> defines a typology either implicitly, by means of a bibliographic citation, or explicitly by a structured taxonomy. [2.3.7.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of

Contained by

header: classDecl

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct desc gloss

header: biblFull category

Declaration

```

element taxonomy
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    ( model.glossLike | model.descLike )*
    | category+
    | ( ( model.biblLike ), category* )
  )
}

```

Example

```

<taxonomy xml:id="tax.b">
  <bibl>Brown Corpus</bibl>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.a">
    <catDesc>Press Reportage</catDesc>
    <category xml:id="tax.b.a1">
      <catDesc>Daily</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="tax.b.a2">
      <catDesc>Sunday</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="tax.b.a3">
      <catDesc>National</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="tax.b.a4">
      <catDesc>Provincial</catDesc>
    </category>
  </category>

```



```
<category xml:id="tax.b.a5">
  <catDesc>Political</catDesc>
</category>
<category xml:id="tax.b.a6">
  <catDesc>Sports</catDesc>
</category>
</category>
<category xml:id="tax.b.d">
  <catDesc>Religion</catDesc>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.d1">
    <catDesc>Books</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.d2">
    <catDesc>Periodicals and tracts</catDesc>
  </category>
</category>
</taxonomy>
```

<teiCorpus> contains the whole of a TEI encoded corpus, comprising a single corpus header and one or more TEI elements, each containing a single text header and a text. [4. 15.1.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

@version The version of the TEI scheme

Status Optional

Datatype data.version

Default 5.0

Values a TEI version number

Members contained by

core: teiCorpus

May contain

core: teiCorpus

header: teiHeader

textstructure: TEI

Declaration

```
element teiCorpus
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute version { data.version }?,
  ( teiHeader, ( TEI | teiCorpus )+ )
}
```

Example

```
<teiCorpus version="5.2" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <teiHeader/>
```

```

<TEI xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <teiHeader/>
  <text/>
</TEI>
<TEI xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <teiHeader/>
  <text/>
</TEI>
</teiCorpus>

```

Note Must contain one TEI header for the corpus, and a series of <TEI> elements, one for each text. This element is mandatory when applicable.

<teiHeader> (TEI Header) supplies the descriptive and declarative information making up an electronic title page prefixed to every TEI-conformant text. [2.1.1.15.1.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

@type specifies the kind of document to which the header is attached, for example whether it is a corpus or individual text.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Sample values include: **text** the header is attached to a single text. [Default]

corpus the header is attached to a corpus.

Member of

core: teiCorpus

textstructure: TEI

May contain

header: encodingDesc fileDesc profileDesc revisionDesc

Declaration

```

element teiHeader
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  ( fileDesc, model.teiHeaderPart*, revisionDesc? )
}

```

Example

```

<teiHeader>
  <fileDesc>
    <titleStmt>
      <title>Shakespeare: the first folio (1623) in electronic form</title>
      <author>Shakespeare, William (1564–1616)</author>
    <respStmt>

```



```

    </refsDecl>
  </encodingDesc>
  <revisionDesc>
    <list>
      <item>
        <date when="1989-04-12">12 Apr 89</date> Last checked by CAC</item>
      <item>
        <date when="1989-03-01">1 Mar 89</date> LB made new file</item>
      </list>
    </revisionDesc>
  </teiHeader>

```

Note One of the few elements unconditionally required in any TEI document.

<term> contains a single-word, multi-word, or symbolic designation which is regarded as a technical term. [3.3.4.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.declaring (@decls) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.cReferencing (@cRef)

Member of model.emphLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s span

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi index item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyp h iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote keywords language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage

iso-fs: fDescr fsDescr

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic
gaiji: g
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib
linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline
transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element term
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  att.cReferencing.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

A computational device that infers structure from grammatical strings of words is known as a **<term>parser</term>**, and much of the history of NLP over the last 20 years has been occupied with the design of parsers.

Example

We may define **<term rend="sc" xml:id="TDPV">discoursal point of view</term>** as **<gloss target="#TDPV">the relationship, expressed through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other addresser, and the fiction.</gloss>**

Note This element is used to supply the form under which an index entry is to be made for the location of a parent <index> element. In formal terminological work, there is frequently discussion over whether terms must be atomic or may include multi-word lexical items, symbolic designations, or phraseological units. The <term> element may be used to mark any of these. No position is taken on the philosophical issue of what a term can be; the looser definition simply allows the <term> element to be used by practitioners of any persuasion. As with other members of the att.canonical class, instances of this element occurring in a text may be associated with a canonical definition, either by means of a URI (using the ref attribute), or by means of some system-specific code value (using the key attribute). Because the mutually exclusive target and cRef attributes overlap with the function of the ref attribute, they are deprecated and may be removed at a subsequent release.

<text> contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample. [4.15.1.]

Module textstructure

1 ELEMENTS

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.declaring (@decls) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of

Contained by

textstructure: TEI group

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: cb gap gb index lb milestone note pb

figures: figure notatedMusic

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

textstructure: back body front group

transcr: addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

Declaration

```
element text
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    model.global*,
    ( front, model.global* )?,
    ( body | group ),
    model.global*,
    ( back, model.global* )?
  )
}
```

Example

```
<text>
  <front>
    <docTitle>
      <titlePart>Autumn Haze</titlePart>
    </docTitle>
  </front>
  <body>
    <l>Is it a dragonfly or a maple leaf</l>
    <l>That settles softly down upon the water?</l>
  </body>
</text>
```

Example The body of a text may be replaced by a group of nested texts, as in the following schematic:

```
<text>
  <front/>
  <group>
    <text/>
    <text/>
  </group>
</text>
```

Note This element should not be used to represent a text which is inserted at an arbitrary point within the structure of another, for example as in an embedded or quoted narrative; the <floatingText> is provided for this purpose.

<textClass> (text classification) groups information which describes the nature or topic of a text in terms of a standard classification scheme, thesaurus, etc. [2.4.3.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.declarable (@default)

Member of model.profileDescPart

Contained by

header: profileDesc

May contain

header: catRef classCode keywords

Declaration

```
element textClass
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  ( classCode | catRef | keywords ) *
}
```

Example

```
<taxonomy>
  <category xml:id="acprose">
    <catDesc>Academic prose</catDesc>
  </category>
</taxonomy>
<textClass>
  <catRef target="#acprose"/>
  <classCode scheme="http://www.udcc.org">001.9</classCode>
  <keywords scheme="http://authorities.loc.gov">
    <list>
      <item>End of the world</item>
      <item>History - philosophy</item>
    </list>
  </keywords>
</textClass>
```

<textDesc> (text description) provides a description of a text in terms of its situational parameters. [15.2.1.]

Module corpus

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.declarable (@default)

Member of model.catDescPart model.profileDescPart

Contained by

header: catDesc profileDesc

May contain

corpus: channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction preparedness
purpose

Declaration

```
element textDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  ( model.textDescPart_sequence, purpose+ )
}
```

Example

```
<textDesc n="Informal domestic conversation">
  <channel mode="s"/>
  <constitution type="single"/>
  <derivation type="original"/>
  <domain type="domestic"/>
  <factuality type="mixed"/>
  <interaction active="plural" passive="many" type="complete"/>
  <preparedness type="spontaneous"/>
  <purpose degree="high" type="entertain"/>
  <purpose degree="medium" type="inform"/>
</textDesc>
```

<textLang> (text language) describes the languages and writing systems identified within the bibliographic work being described, rather than its description. [3.11.2.3. 10.6.6.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

@mainLang (main language) supplies a code which identifies the chief language used in the bibliographic work.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.language`

Values a recognized language ‘tag’ generated according to BCP 47 which may additionally be documented by a <language> element in the header

@otherLangs (other languages) one or more codes identifying any other languages used in the bibliographic work.

Status Optional

Datatype 0–∞ occurrences of `data.language` separated by whitespace

Values a list of codes, each of which is a recognized language ‘tag’ generated according to BCP 47 which may additionally be documented by a <language> element in the header

Member of model.biblPart model.msItemPart

Contained by

core: analytic bibl monogr series

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element textLang
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute mainLang { data.language }?,
  attribute otherLangs { list { data.language* } }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```
<textLang mainLang="en" otherLangs="la"> Predominantly in English with
Latin
glosses</textLang>
```

Note Note that this element should not be used to document the languages or writing systems used for the bibliographic or manuscript description itself: as for all other TEI elements, such information should be provided by means of the global `xml:lang` attribute attached to the element containing the description. The same values should be used to identify languages and writing systems in all cases, and the codes used may be documented further in the `<language>` element.

<then/> separates the condition from the default in an `<if>`, or the antecedent and the consequent in a `<cond>` element. [18.11.]

Module iso-fs

Attributes Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@rend`, `@style`, `@rendition`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) (`att.global.change` (`@change`))

Member of

Contained by

iso-fs: cond if

May contain Empty element

Declaration `element then { att.global.attributes, empty }`

Example

```
<cond>
  <fs>
    <f name="BAR">
      <symbol value="1"/>
    </f>
  </fs>
  <then/>
  <fs>
    <f name="F00">
      <binary value="false"/>
    </f>
  </fs>
</cond>
```

Note This element is provided primarily to enhance the human readability of the feature-system declaration.

<time> contains a phrase defining a time of day in any format. [3.5.4.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global-linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global-analytic (@ana)) (att.global-facs (@facs)) (att.global-change (@change)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope)) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.dateLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s span

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose setting

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyp h iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition sponsor tagUsage

iso-fs: fDescr fsDescr

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w
core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan
foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned
milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear
dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar
figures: figure formula notatedMusic
gaiji: g
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib
linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline
transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo
Declaration

```
element time
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dateable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global ) *
}
```

Example

As he sat smiling, the
quarter struck – <time when="11:45:00">the quarter to twelve</time>.

<timeline> (timeline) provides a set of ordered points in time which can be linked to elements of a spoken text to create a temporal alignment of that text. [16.5.2.]

Module linking

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

@origin designates the origin of the timeline, i.e. the time at which it begins.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.pointer`

Values if supplied, must point either to one of the <when> elements in its content, or to another <timeline> element.

Note If this attribute is not supplied, the implication is that the time of origin is not known.

@unit specifies the unit of time corresponding to the interval value of the timeline or of its constituent points in time.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Suggested values include: **d** (days)

h (hours)

min (minutes)

s (seconds)

ms (milliseconds)

@interval specifies the numeric portion of a time interval

Status Optional

Datatype

```
xsd:float { minExclusive = "0" } | "regular" | "irregular"
```

Values a positive number, or one of the two special values irregular or regular.

Note The value irregular indicates uncertainty about all the intervals in the timeline; the value regular indicates that all the intervals are evenly spaced, but the size of the intervals is not known; numeric values indicate evenly spaced values of the size specified. If individual points in time in the timeline are given different values for the interval attribute, those values locally override the value given in the timeline.

Member of model.global.meta

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s span w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hom hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal sponsor

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace sourceDoc supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain

linking: when

Declaration

```
element timeline
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute origin { data.pointer }?,
  attribute unit { "d" | "h" | "min" | "s" | "ms" | xsd:Name }?,
  attribute interval
  {
    xsd:float { minExclusive = "0" } | "regular" | "irregular"
  }?,
}
```

```
    when+  
}
```

Example

```
<timeline unit="ms" xml:id="TL01">  
  <when absolute="11:30:00" xml:id="TL-w0"/>  
  <when interval="unknown" since="#TL-w0" xml:id="TL-w1"/>  
  <when interval="100" since="#TL-w1" xml:id="TL-w2"/>  
  <when interval="200" since="#TL-w2" xml:id="TL-w3"/>  
  <when interval="150" since="#TL-w3" xml:id="TL-w4"/>  
  <when interval="250" since="#TL-w4" xml:id="TL-w5"/>  
  <when interval="100" since="#TL-w5" xml:id="TL-w6"/>  
</timeline>
```

<title> contains a title for any kind of work. [3.11.2.2. 2.2.1. 2.2.5.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.typed (type, @subtype)

@type classifies the title according to some convenient typology.

Derived from att.typed

Status Optional

Datatype **data.enumerated**

Sample values include: **main** main title

sub (subordinate) subtitle, title of part

alt (alternate) alternate title, often in another language, by which the work is also known

short abbreviated form of title

desc (descriptive) descriptive paraphrase of the work functioning as a title

Note This attribute is provided for convenience in analysing titles and processing them according to their type; where such specialized processing is not necessary, there is no need for such analysis, and the entire title, including subtitles and any parallel titles, may be enclosed within a single <title> element.

@level indicates the bibliographic level for a title, that is, whether it identifies an article, book, journal, series, or unpublished material.

Status Optional

Datatype **data.enumerated**

Legal values are: **a** (analytic) analytic title (article, poem, or other item published as part of a larger item)

m (monographic) monographic title (book, collection, or other item published as a distinct item, including single volumes of multi-volume works)

j (journal) journal title

s (series) series title

u (unpublished) title of unpublished material (including theses and dissertations unless published by a commercial press)

Note The level of a title is sometimes implied by its context: for example, a title appearing directly within an <analytic> element is *ipso facto* of level ‘a’, and one appearing within a <series> element of level ‘s’. For this reason, the level attribute is not required in contexts where its value can be unambiguously inferred. Where it is supplied in such contexts, its value should not contradict the value implied by its parent element.

Member of model.emphLike model.msQuoteLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s span

core: abbr add addrLine analytic author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned monogr name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

corpus: activity channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction locale preparedness purpose

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyp h iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition seriesStmt sponsor tagUsage titleStmt

iso-fs: fDescr fsDescr

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

element title

```
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  attribute level { "a" | "m" | "j" | "s" | "u" }?,
  macro.paraContent}
```

Example

```
<title>Information Technology and the Research Process: Proceedings of
a conference held at Cranfield Institute of Technology, UK,
18–21 July 1989</title>
```

Example

```
<title>Hardy's Tess of the D'Urbervilles: a machine readable
edition</title>
```

Example

```
<title type="full">
  <title type="main">Synthèse</title>
  <title type="sub">an international journal for
    epistemology, methodology and history of
    science</title>
</title>
```

Note The attributes `key` and `ref`, inherited from the class `att.canonical` may be used to indicate the canonical form for the title; the former, by supplying (for example) the identifier of a record in some external library system; the latter by pointing to an XML element somewhere containing the canonical form of the title.

<titlePage> (title page) contains the title page of a text, appearing within the front or back matter. [4.6.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@rend`, `@style`, `@rendition`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) (`att.global.change` (`@change`))

@type classifies the title page according to any convenient typology.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Note This attribute allows the same element to be used for volume title pages, series title pages, etc., as well as for the 'main' title page of a work.

Member of model.frontPart

Contained by

textstructure: back front

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp

core: binaryObject cb gap gb graphic index lb milestone note pb

figures: figure notatedMusic

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline

textstructure: argument byline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle
epigraph imprimatur titlePart

transcr: addSpan damageSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

Declaration

```
element titlePage
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  (
    model.global*,
    ( model.titlepagePart ),
    ( model.titlepagePart | model.global )*
  )
}
```

Example

```
<titlePage>
  <docTitle>
    <titlePart type="main">THOMAS OF Reading.</titlePart>
    <titlePart type="alt">OR, The sixe worthy yeomen of the West.</titlePart>
  </docTitle>
  <docEdition>Now the fourth time corrected and enlarged</docEdition>
  <byline>By T.D.</byline>
  <figure>
    <head>TP</head>
    <p>Thou shalt labor till thou returne to duste</p>
    <figDesc>Printers Ornament used by TP</figDesc>
  </figure>
  <docImprint>Printed at <name type="place">London</name> for
  <name>T.P.</name>
  <date>1612.</date>
</docImprint>
</titlePage>
```

<titlePart> contains a subsection or division of the title of a work, as indicated on a title page. [4.6.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

@type specifies the role of this subdivision of the title.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Suggested values include: **main** main title of the work [Default]

sub (subordinate) subtitle of the work

alt (alternate) alternative title of the work

short abbreviated form of title

desc (descriptive) descriptive paraphrase of the work

Member of model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

textstructure: back docTitle front titlePage

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc
distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list
listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr
q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element titlePart
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { "main" | "sub" | "alt" | "short" | "desc" | xsd:Name }?,
  macro.paraContent}
}
```

Example

```
<docTitle>
  <titlePart type="main">THE FORTUNES
    AND MISFORTUNES Of the FAMOUS
    Moll Flanders, &c.
  </titlePart>
  <titlePart type="desc">Who was BORN in NEWGATE,
    And during a Life of continu'd Variety for
    Threescore Years, besides her Childhood, was
    Twelve Year a <hi>Whore</hi>, five times a <hi>Wife</hi> (wherof
    once to her own Brother) Twelve Year a <hi>Thief,</hi>
    Eight Year a Transported <hi>Felon</hi> in <hi>Virginia</hi>,
    at last grew <hi>Rich</hi>, liv'd <hi>Honest</hi>, and died a
    <hi>Penitent</hi>.</titlePart>
</docTitle>
```

<titleStmt> (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its content. [2.2.1. 2.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of

Contained by

header: biblFull fileDesc

May contain

core: author editor meeting respStmt title

header: funder principal sponsor

Declaration

```
element titleStmt { att.global.attributes, ( title+, model.respLike* ) }
```

Example

```
<titleStmt>
  <title>Capgrave's Life of St. John Norbert: a machine-readable
  transcription</title>
  <respStmt>
    <resp>compiled by</resp>
    <name>P.J. Lucas</name>
  </respStmt>
</titleStmt>
```

<tns> (tense) indicates the grammatical tense associated with a given inflected form in a dictionary. [9.3.1.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))

Member of model.morphLike

Contained by

dictionaries: dictScrap entryFree etym form gramGrp

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element tns
{
```

```
att.global.attributes,  
att.lexicographic.attributes,  
macro.paraContent}
```

Example Taken from *Wörterbuch der Deutschen Sprache. Veranstalet und herausgegeben von Joachim Heinrich Campe. Vierter Theil. S - bis - T. (Braunschweig 1810. In der Schulbuchhandlung):*

Treffen, v. unregelm. ... du triffst, ...

```
<entry>  
  <form type="inflected">  
    <gramGrp>  
      <per value="2"/>  
      <number value="singular"/>  
      <tns value="present"/>  
      <mood value="indicative"/>  
    </gramGrp>  
    <form type="personalpronoun">  
      <orth>du</orth>  
    </form>  
    <form type="headword">  
      <orth>  
        <oVar>triffst</oVar>  
      </orth>  
    </form>  
  </form>  
</entry>
```

Note This element is synonymous with <gram type="tense">.

<trailer> contains a closing title or footer appearing at the end of a division of a text.

[4.2.4. 4.2.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.divBottomPart

Contained by

core: lg list

figures: figure table

textstructure: back body div front group postscript

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

1 ELEMENTS

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose
metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element trailer
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<trailer>Explicit pars tertia</trailer>
```

<transpose> describes a single textual transposition as an ordered list of at least two pointers specifying the order in which the elements indicated should be re-combined.

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))

Member of

Contained by

transcr: listTranspose

May contain

core: ptr

Declaration

```
element transpose { att.global.attributes, ( ptr, ptr+ ) }
```

Example

```
<transpose>
  <ptr target="#ib02"/>
  <ptr target="#ib01"/>
</transpose>
```

The transposition recorded here indicates that the content of the element with identifier **ib02** should appear before the content of the element with identifier **ib01**.

Note Transposition is usually indicated in a document by a metamark such as a wavy line or numbering. The order in which **<ptr>** elements appear within a **<transpose>** element should correspond with the desired order, as indicated by the metamark.

<unclear> contains a word, phrase, or passage which cannot be transcribed with certainty because it is illegible or inaudible in the source. [11.3.3.1. 3.4.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

@reason indicates why the material is hard to transcribe.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.word` separated by whitespace

Values one or more words describing the difficulty, e.g. *faded*, *background-noise*, *passing-truck*, *illegible*, *eccentric-ductus*.

```
<div>
  <head>Rx</head>
  <p>500 mg <unclear
    reason="illegible">placebo</unclear>
  </p>
</div>
```

@hand Where the difficulty in transcription arises from action (partial deletion, etc.) assignable to an identifiable hand, signifies the hand responsible for the action.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.pointer`

Values must point to a hand identifier typically but not necessarily declared in the document header (see section 11.3.2.1.).

@agent Where the difficulty in transcription arises from damage, categorizes the cause of the damage, if it can be identified.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Sample values include: **rubbing** damage results from rubbing of the leaf edges

mildew damage results from mildew on the leaf surface

smoke damage results from smoke

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: cl pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: am damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```
element unclear
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  attribute reason { list { data.word+ } }?,
  attribute hand { data.pointer }?,
  attribute agent { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```
and from time to time invited in like manner
his att<unclear>ention</unclear>
```

Here the last few letters of the word are hard to read.

Example

```
<u> ...and then <unclear reason="background-noise">Nathalie</unclear> said
... </u>
```

Note The same element is used for all cases of uncertainty in the transcription of element content, whether for written or spoken material. For other aspects of certainty, uncertainty, and reliability of tagging and transcription, see chapter 21. The <damage>, <gap>, , <unclear> and <supplied> elements may be closely allied in use. See section 11.3.3.2. for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.

<undo/> indicates one or more marked-up interventions in a document which have subsequently been marked for cancellation.

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.transcriptional (@hand, @status, @cause, @seq) (att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging

(@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)))

@target points to one or more elements representing the interventions which are to be reverted or undone.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of data.pointer separated by whitespace

Member of model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: cl pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyph iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: am damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element undo
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  att.transcriptional.attributes,
  attribute target { list { data.pointer+ } }?,
  empty
}
```

Example

```
<line>This is <del change="#s2" rend="overstrike">
  <seg xml:id="undo-a">just some</seg>
  sample <seg xml:id="undo-b">text</seg>,
  we need</del>
  <add change="#s2">not</add>
a real example.</line>
<undo change="#s3" rend="dotted" target="#undo-a #undo-b"/>
```

This encoding represents the following sequence of events:

- "This is just some sample text, we need a real example" is written
- At stage s2, "just some sample text, we need" is deleted by overstriking, and "not" is added
- At stage s3, parts of the deletion are cancelled by underdotted, thus reinstating the words "just some" and "text".

<unicodeName> (unicode property name) contains the name of a registered Unicode normative or informative property.

Module gaiji

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

@version specifies the version number of the Unicode Standard in which this property name is defined.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.version`

Values a valid Unicode version number.

Member of Confined by

gaiji: charProp

May contain Character data only

Declaration

```
element unicodeName
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute version { data.version }?,
  text
}
```

Example

```
<unicodeName>character-decomposition-mapping</unicodeName>
<unicodeName>general-category</unicodeName>
```

Note A definitive list of current Unicode property names is provided in The Unicode Standard.

<usg> (usage) contains usage information in a dictionary entry. [9.3.5.2.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))

@type classifies the usage information using any convenient typology.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Sample values include: **geo** (geographic) geographic area

time temporal, historical era (archaic, old, etc.)

dom (domain) domain or subject matter (e.g. scientific, literary etc.)

register (register)

style style (figurative, literal, etc.)

plev (preference level) preference level (chiefly, usually, etc.)

lang (language) name of a language mentioned in etymological or other linguistic discussion.
gram (grammatical) grammatical usage
syn (synonym) synonym given to show use
hyper (hypernym) hypernym given to show usage
colloc (collocation) typical collocate of the headword.
comp (complement) typical complement
obj (object) typical object
subj (subject) typical subject
verb typical verb
hint unclassifiable piece of information to guide sense choice

Member of model.entryPart model.entryPart.top model.gramPart

Contained by

core: cit

dictionaries: dictScrap entry entryFree etym form gramGrp hom re sense xr

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang oRef oVar pRef pVar

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```

element usg
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```

<form>
  <orth>colour</orth>
  <form>
    <usg type="geo">U.S.</usg>
    <orth>color</orth>
  </form>
</form>

```

<vAlt> (value alternation) represents the value part of a feature-value specification which contains a set of values, only one of which can be valid. [18.8.1.]

Module iso-fs

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.featureVal.single

Contained by

iso-fs: f fvLib if vAlt vColl vDefault vLabel vMerge vNot vRange

May contain

iso-fs: binary default fs numeric string symbol vAlt vColl vLabel vMerge vNot

Declaration

```
element vAlt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( ( model.featureVal ), model.featureVal+ )
}
```

Example

```
<f name="gender">
  <vAlt>
    <symbol value="masculine"/>
    <symbol value="neuter"/>
    <symbol value="feminine"/>
  </vAlt>
</f>
```

<vColl> (collection of values) represents the value part of a feature-value specification which contains multiple values organized as a set, bag, or list. [18.7.]

Module iso-fs

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

@org (organization) indicates organization of given value or values as set, bag or list.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Legal values are: **set** indicates that the given values are organized as a set.

bag indicates that the given values are organized as a bag (multiset).

list indicates that the given values are organized as a list.

Member of model.featureVal.complex

Contained by

iso-fs: f fvLib if vAlt vDefault vLabel vMerge vNot vRange

May contain

iso-fs: binary default fs numeric string symbol vAlt vLabel

Declaration

```
element vColl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute org { "set" | "bag" | "list" }?,
  ( ( fs | model.featureVal.single ) * )
}
```

Example

```
<f name="name">
  <vColl>
    <string>Jean</string>
    <string>Luc</string>
    <string>Godard</string>
  </vColl>
</f>
```

Example

```
<fs>
  <f name="lex">
    <symbol value="auxquels"/>
  </f>
  <f name="maf">
    <vColl org="list">
      <fs>
        <f name="cat">
          <symbol value="prep"/>
        </f>
      </fs>
      <fs>
        <f name="cat">
          <symbol value="pronoun"/>
        </f>
        <f name="kind">
          <symbol value="rel"/>
        </f>
        <f name="num">
          <symbol value="pl"/>
        </f>
        <f name="gender">
          <symbol value="masc"/>
        </f>
      </fs>
    </vColl>
  </f>
</fs>
```

<vDefault> (value default) declares the default value to be supplied when a feature structure does not contain an instance of <f> for this name; if unconditional, it is specified as one (or, depending on the value of the org attribute of the enclosing <fDecl>) more <fs> elements or primitive values; if conditional, it is specified as one or more <if> elements; if no default is specified, or no condition matches, the value none is assumed. [18.11.]

Module iso-fs

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of

Contained by

iso-fs: fDecl

May contain

iso-fs: binary default fs if numeric string symbol vAlt vColl vLabel vMerge vNot

Declaration

```
element vDefault { att.global.attributes, ( model.featureVal+ | if+ ) }
```

Example

```
<fDecl name="INV">
  <fDescr>inverted sentence</fDescr>
  <vRange>
    <vAlt>
      <binary value="true"/>
      <binary value="false"/>
    </vAlt>
  </vRange>
  <vDefault>
    <binary value="false"/>
  </vDefault>
</fDecl>
```

Note May contain a legal feature value, or a series of <if> elements.

<vLabel> (value label) represents the value part of a feature-value specification which appears at more than one point in a feature structure. [18.6.]

Module iso-fs

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

@name supplies a name for the sharing point.

Status Required

Datatype **data.word**

Values An identifying name.

Member of model.featureVal.single

Contained by

iso-fs: f fvLib if vAlt vColl vDefault vLabel vMerge vNot vRange

May contain

iso-fs: binary default fs numeric string symbol vAlt vColl vLabel vMerge vNot

Declaration

```
element vLabel
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute name { data.word },
```

```
    model.featureVal?  
  }
```

Example

```
<fs>  
  <f name="nominal">  
    <fs>  
      <f name="nm-num">  
        <vLabel name="L1">  
          <symbol value="singular"/>  
        </vLabel>  
      </f>  
    </fs>  
  </f>  
  <f name="verbal">  
    <fs>  
      <f name="vb-num">  
        <vLabel name="L1"/>  
      </f>  
    </fs>  
  </f>  
</fs>
```

<vMerge> (merged collection of values) represents a feature value which is the result of merging together the feature values contained by its children, using the organization specified by the org attribute. [18.8.3.]

Module iso-fs

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

@org indicates the organization of the resulting merged values as set, bag or list.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Legal values are: **set** indicates that the resulting values are organized as a set.

bag indicates that the resulting values are organized as a bag (multiset).

list indicates that the resulting values are organized as a list.

Member of model.featureVal.complex

Contained by

iso-fs: f fvLib if vAlt vDefault vLabel vMerge vNot vRange

May contain

iso-fs: binary default fs numeric string symbol vAlt vColl vLabel vMerge vNot

Declaration

```
element vMerge  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  attribute org { "set" | "bag" | "list" }?,  
  model.featureVal+  
}
```

Example

```
<vMerge org="list">
  <vColl org="set">
    <symbol value="masculine"/>
    <symbol value="neuter"/>
    <symbol value="feminine"/>
  </vColl>
  <symbol value="indeterminate"/>
</vMerge>
```

This example returns a list, concatenating the indeterminate value with the set of values masculine, neuter and feminine.

<vNot> (value negation) represents a feature value which is the negation of its content. [18.8.2.]

Module iso-fs

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.featureVal.complex

Contained by

iso-fs: f fvLib if vAlt vDefault vLabel vMerge vNot vRange

May contain

iso-fs: binary default fs numeric string symbol vAlt vColl vLabel vMerge vNot

Declaration

```
element vNot { att.global.attributes, ( model.featureVal ) }
```

Example

```
<vNot>
  <symbol value="masculine"/>
</vNot>
```

Example

```
<f name="mode">
  <vNot>
    <vAlt>
      <symbol value="infinitive"/>
      <symbol value="participle"/>
    </vAlt>
  </vNot>
</f>
```

<vRange> (value range) defines the range of allowed values for a feature, in the form of an <fs>, <vAlt>, or primitive value; for the value of an <f> to be valid, it must be subsumed by the specified range; if the <f> contains multiple values (as sanctioned by the org attribute), then each value must be subsumed by the <vRange>. [18.11.]

Module iso-fs

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of

Contained by

iso-fs: fDecl

May contain

iso-fs: binary default fs numeric string symbol vAlt vColl vLabel vMerge vNot

Declaration

```
element vRange { att.global.attributes, model.featureVal }
```

Example

```
<fDecl name="INV">
  <fDescr>inverted sentence</fDescr>
  <vRange>
    <vAlt>
      <binary value="true"/>
      <binary value="false"/>
    </vAlt>
  </vRange>
  <vDefault>
    <binary value="false"/>
  </vDefault>
</fDecl>
```

Note May contain any legal feature-value specification.

<value> (value) contains a single value for some property, attribute, or other analysis.

Module gaiji

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of

Contained by

gaiji: charProp

May contain

gaiji: g

Declaration

```
element value { att.global.attributes, macro.xtext }
```

Example

```
<value>unknown</value>
```

<w> (word) IMPACT: w can contain, in addition to standard TEI attributes, also @nfrom, @pattern, @mform, @ctag, @msd, @resp, @time. Furthermore, @type and @subtype have a restricted set of values. [17.1.]

Module analysis

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.segLike (@function) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part))

@type The type of the word.

Status Optional

Datatype data.key

Legal values are: **normal** Normal run-of-the-mill word.[Default]

digits A word composed of digits, typically as identified by the tokeniser. Note that if this is a multiword / split word it should receive the @type 'multiw' / 'split'.

abbrev An abbreviation affecting sentence segmentation, typically as identified by the tokeniser. Note that if this is a multiword / split word it should receive the @type 'multiw' / 'split'.

multiw A historical word that should be joined with other historical words to get one modern word. Note that such words should have the @n attribute giving the identifier of the words to be joined.

split A historical word that should be split to get several modern words. Note that such words will have the @lemma, @ctag, @msd composed of several underscore-joined values.

@subtype The sub-type of the word.

Status Optional

Datatype data.key

Legal values are: **modern** A word retrieved from the lexicon of contemporary words.[Default]

lexicon A word retrieved from the lexicon of historically attested words.

pattern The transcription patterns with which the word was matched against a contemporary word.

unknown An unknown historical word.

manual A manually corrected or verified word.

@nform The normalised form of the word.

Status Optional

Datatype data.key

@pattern The replacement pattern to rewrite the modern to the historical word.

Status Optional

Datatype data.key

@mform The modernised form of the (historical) word.

Status Optional

Datatype data.key

@ctag Part-of-speech / lexical morphosyntactic tag.

- Status* Required
- Datatype* `text`
- @msd** Morphosyntactic description with lexical and inflectional features.
- Status* Optional
- Datatype* `data.pointer`
- @resp** Annotator responsible for validating the annotation.
- Status* Optional
- Datatype* `data.pointer`
- @time** Date and time of annotation.
- Status* Optional
- Datatype* `data.temporal.iso`
- @lemma** Lemma for the word.
- Status* Required
- Datatype* `data.key`
- @lemmaRef** provides a pointer to a definition of the lemma for the word, for example in an online lexicon.
- Status* Optional
- Datatype* `data.pointer`

Member of model.segLike

Contained by

analysis: cl phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: case colloc def dictScrap entryFree etym form gen gram gramGrp hyp h iType lang lbl mood number orth per pos pron re sense stress subc syll tns usg xr

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod restore retrace supplied surplus zone

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m span spanGrp w

core: abbr add cb choice corr del expan gap gb hi index lb milestone note orig pb reg sic unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```

element w
{

```

```

    att.global.attributes,
    att.segLike.attributes,
    attribute type { "normal" | "digits" | "abbrev" | "multiw" | "split" }?,
    attribute subtype
    {
        "modern" | "lexicon" | "pattern" | "unknown" | "manual"
    }?,
    attribute nform { data.key }?,
    attribute pattern { data.key }?,
    attribute mform { data.key }?,
    attribute ctag { text },
    attribute msd { data.pointer }?,
    attribute resp { data.pointer }?,
    attribute time { data.temporal.iso }?,
    attribute lemma { data.key },
    attribute lemmaRef { data.pointer }?,
    (
        text
        | model.gLike      | seg      | w      | m      | c      | model.global      | model.lPart      | m
    )
}

```

Example

```

<w
  lemma="hit"
  lemmaRef="http://www.example.com/lexicon/hitvb.xml"
  type="verb">hitt<m type="suffix">ing</m>
</w>

```

<when/> indicates a point in time either relative to other elements in the same timeline tag, or absolutely. [16.5.2.]

Module linking

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

@absolute supplies an absolute value for the time.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.temporal.w3c`

Note This attribute should always be specified on a <when> element which serves as the target for the origin attribute of a <timeLine>.

@unit specifies the unit of time in which the interval value is expressed, if this is not inherited from the parent <timeline>.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Suggested values include: **d** (days)

h (hours)

min (minutes)

s (seconds)

ms (milliseconds)

@interval specifies the numeric portion of a time interval

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:float { minExclusive = "0" } | "unknown"`

Values a positive number, or the special value unknown.

Note The value unknown indicates uncertainty about the interval.

@since identifies the reference point for determining the time of the current <when> element, which is obtained by adding the interval to the time of the reference point.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.pointer`

Values Should point to another <when> element in the same <timeline>.

Note If this attribute is omitted, and the absolute attribute is not specified, then the reference point is understood to be the origin of the enclosing <timeline> tag.

Member of **Confined by**

linking: timeline

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element when
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute absolute { data.temporal.w3c }?,
  attribute unit { "d" | "h" | "min" | "s" | "ms" | xsd:Name }?,
  attribute interval { xsd:float { minExclusive = "0" } | "unknown" }?,
  attribute since { data.pointer }?,
  empty
}
```

Example

```
<when interval="20" since="#w2" xml:id="TW3"/>
```

Note On this element, the global xml:id attribute must be supplied to specify an identifier for this point in time. The value used may be chosen freely provided that it is unique within the document and is a syntactically valid name. There is no requirement for values containing numbers to be in sequence.

<xr> (cross-reference phrase) contains a phrase, sentence, or icon referring the reader to some other location in this or another text. [9.3.5.3.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))

@type indicates the type of cross reference, using any convenient typology.

Status Recommended

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Sample values include: **syn** (synonym) cross reference for synonym information

etym (etymological) etymological information

cf (compare or consult) related or similar term

illus (illustration) illustration of an object

Member of model.entryPart model.entryPart.top

Contained by

core: cit

dictionaries: dictScrap entry entryFree etym hom re sense

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

dictionaries: lang lbl oRef oVar pRef pVar usg

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

Declaration

```

element xr
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.phrase      | model.inter      | usg      | lbl      | model.global
  )
}

```

Example

```

<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>lavage</orth>
  </form>
  <etym>[Fr. < <mentioned>laver</mentioned>; L.
<mentioned>lavare</mentioned>, to wash;
  <xr>see <ref>lather</ref>
  </xr>]. </etym>
</entry>

```

Example

```

<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>lawful</orth>

```

```

</form>
<xr type="syn">SYN. see <ref>legal</ref>
</xr>
</entry>

```

Note May contain character data and phrase-level elements; usually contains a <ref> or a <ptr> element. This element encloses both the actual indication of the location referred to, which may be tagged using the <ref> or <ptr> elements, and any accompanying material which gives more information about why the reader is being referred there.

<zone> defines any two-dimensional area within a <surface> element.

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @style, @rendition, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.coordinated (@start, @ulx, @uly, @lrx, @lry) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

@points identifies a two dimensional area within the bounding box specified by the other attributes by means of a series of pairs of numbers, each of which gives the x,y coordinates of a point on a line enclosing the area.

Status Optional

Datatype 3-∞ occurrences of `data.point` separated by whitespace

@rotate indicates the amount by which this zone has been rotated clockwise, with respect to the normal orientation of the parent <surface> element as implied by the dimensions given in the <msDesc> element or by the coordinates of the <surface> itself. The orientation is expressed in arc degrees.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.count`

Default 0

Member of model.linePart

Contained by

transcr: line surface zone

May contain

analysis: c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

core: add binaryObject cb choice corr del gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone note orig pb reg sic unclear

figures: figure formula notatedMusic

iso-fs: fLib fs fvLib

linking: alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline

transcr: addSpan damage damageSpan delSpan fw handShift line listTranspose metamark mod redo restore retrace space substJoin supplied surface surplus undo zone

Declaration

```

element zone
{

```

```
att.global.attributes,  
att.coordinated.attributes,  
att.typed.attributes,  
attribute points  
{  
  list { data.point, data.point, data.point, data.point* }  
}?,  
attribute rotate { data.count }?,  
( text | model.graphicLike | model.global | surface | model.linePart )*  
}
```

Example

```
<surface  
  lrx="0"  
  lry="0"  
  ulx="14.54"  
  uly="16.14">  
<graphic url="stone.jpg"/>  
<zone  
  points="4.6,6.3 5.25,5.85 6.2,6.6 8.19222,7.4125 9.89222,6.5875  
10.9422,6.1375 11.4422,6.7125 8.21722,8.3125 6.2,7.65"/>  
</surface>
```

This example defines a non-rectangular zone: see the illustration in section PH-surfzone.

Example

```
<facsimile>  
  <surface  
    lrx="400"  
    lry="280"  
    ulx="50"  
    uly="20">  
    <zone  
      lrx="500"  
      lry="321"  
      ulx="0"  
      uly="0">  
      <graphic url="graphic.png "/>  
    </zone>  
  </surface>  
</facsimile>
```

This example defines a zone which has been defined as larger than its parent surface in order to match the dimensions of the graphic it contains.

Note The position of every zone for a given surface is always defined by reference to the coordinate system defined for that surface. A graphic element contained by a zone represents the whole of the zone. A zone may be of any shape. The attribute points may be used to define a polygonal zone, using the coordinate system defined by its parent surface.

2 Model classes

model.addrPart groups elements such as names or postal codes which may appear as part of a postal address. [3.5.2.]

Module tei

Used by address

Members model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name] rs idno lang] addrLine street
postCode postBox

model.addressLike groups elements used to represent a postal or e-mail address. [1.]

Module tei

Used by model.pPart.data

Members email address

model.applicationLike groups elements used to record application-specific information about a document in its header.

Module tei

Used by appInfo

Members application

model.availabilityPart groups elements such as licences and paragraphs of text which may appear as part of an availability statment [2.2.4.]

Module tei

Used by availability

Members licence

model.biblLike groups elements containing a bibliographic description. [3.11.]

Module tei

Used by cit listBibl model.inter relatedItem sourceDesc taxonomy

Members bibl biblStruct biblFull

model.biblPart groups elements which represent components of a bibliographic description. [3.11.]

Module tei

Used by bibl

Members model.respLike[author editor respStmnt meeting sponsor funder principal]
model.imprintPart[publisher biblScope pubPlace distributor] series citedRange bibl
relatedItem textLang edition extent

model.catDescPart groups component elements of the TEI Header Category Description.

Module tei

Used by catDesc

Members textDesc

model.choicePart groups elements (other than <choice> itself) which can be used within a <choice> alternation. [3.4.]

Module tei

Used by choice

Members sic corr reg orig unclear abbr expan seg ex am

model.common groups common chunk- and inter-level elements. [1.3.]

Module tei

Used by argument body div epigraph figure postscript

Members model.divPart[model.lLike[l] model.pLike[p ab] lg sp] model.inter[model.egLike model.biblLike[bibl biblStruct biblFull] model.labelLike[desc label] model.listLike[list listBibl table] model.stageLike[stage] model.qLike[model.quoteLike[quote cit] said q floatingText]] model.entryLike[superEntry entry entryFree]

Note This class defines the set of chunk- and inter-level elements; it is used in many content models, including those for textual divisions.

model.dateLike groups elements containing temporal expressions. [3.5.4. 13.3.6.]

Module tei

Used by imprint model.pPart.data setting

Members date time

model.descLike groups elements which contain a description of their function.

Module tei

Used by category char gap glyph graphic interp interpGrp join media space substJoin taxonomy

Members desc

model.divBottom groups elements appearing at the end of a text division. [4.2.]

Module tei

Used by body div group lg list table

Members model.divWrapper[meeting byline dateline argument epigraph salute docAuthor docDate] model.divBottomPart[trailer closer signed postscript]

model.divBottomPart groups elements which can occur only at the end of a text division. [4.6.]

Module tei

Used by back figure front model.divBottom postscript

Members trailer closer signed postscript

model.divGenLike groups elements used to represent a structural division which is generated rather than explicitly present in the source.

Module tei

Used by body div

Members divGen

model.divLike groups elements used to represent un-numbered generic structural divisions.

Module tei

Used by back body div front

Members div

model.divPart groups paragraph-level elements appearing directly within divisions. [1.3.]

Module tei

Used by macro.specialPara model.common

Members model.lLike[l] model.pLike[p ab] lg sp

Note Note that this element class does not include members of the `model.inter` class, which can appear either within or between paragraph-level items.

model.divTop groups elements appearing at the beginning of a text division. [4.2.]

Module tei

Used by body div group lg list

Members model.divWrapper[meeting byline dateline argument epigraph salute docAuthor docDate] model.divTopPart[model.headLike[head] opener]

model.divTopPart groups elements which can occur only at the beginning of a text division. [4.6.]

Module tei

Used by model.divTop postscript

Members model.headLike[head] opener

model.divWrapper groups elements which can appear at either top or bottom of a textual division. [4.2.]

Module tei

Used by model.divBottom model.divTop

Members meeting byline dateline argument epigraph salute docAuthor docDate

model.editorialDeclPart groups elements which may be used inside `<editorialDecl>` and appear multiple times.

Module tei

Used by editorialDecl

Members correction normalization quotation hyphenation segmentation stdVals
interpretation

model.emphLike groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct and to which a specific function can be attributed. [3.3.]

Module tei

Used by model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase

Members foreign emph distinct mentioned soCalled gloss term title

model.encodingDescPart groups elements which may be used inside <encodingDesc> and appear multiple times.

Module tei

Used by encodingDesc

Members projectDesc samplingDecl editorialDecl tagsDecl styleDefDecl refsDecl
listPrefixDef classDecl geoDecl appInfo charDecl fsdDecl

model.entryLike groups elements structurally analogous to paragraphs within dictionaries. [9.1. 1.3.]

Module dictionaries

Used by model.common

Members superEntry entry entryFree

model.entryPart groups non-morphological elements appearing within a dictionary entry. [9.1.]

Module tei

Used by cit dictScrap entryFree

Members superEntry hom sense form orth pron hyph syll gramGrp pos subc colloc def
etym usg lbl xr re

model.entryPart.top groups high level elements within a structured dictionary entry [9.2.]

Module tei

Used by entry hom re sense

Members cit dictScrap form gramGrp def etym usg xr re

Note Members of this class typically contain related parts of a dictionary entry which form a coherent subdivision, for example a particular sense, homonym, etc.

model.featureVal groups elements which represent feature values in feature structures.

Module tei

Used by f fvLib if vAlt vDefault vLabel vMerge vNot vRange

Members model.featureVal.complex[fs vColl vNot vMerge] model.featureVal.single[binary symbol numeric string vLabel default vAlt]

model.featureVal.complex groups elements which express complex feature values in feature structures.

Module tei

Used by model.featureVal

Members fs vColl vNot vMerge

model.featureVal.single group elements used to represent atomic feature values in feature structures.

Module tei

Used by model.featureVal vColl

Members binary symbol numeric string vLabel default vAlt

model.formPart groups elements allowed within a <form> element in a dictionary. [9.3.1.]

Module dictionaries

Used by form

Members form orth pron hyph syll stress model.gramPart[model.morphLike[gram gen number case per tns mood iType] gramGrp pos subc colloc usg lbl]

model.frontPart groups elements which appear at the level of divisions within front or back matter. [7.1.]

Module tei

Used by back front

Members divGen titlePage

model.gLike groups elements used to represent individual non-Unicode characters or glyphs.

Module tei

Used by am bibl byline closer date dictScrap docImprint entryFree etym f form gramGrp head idno interp m macro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.specialPara macro.xtext measureGrp oVar opener pVar pc re sense series time w xr

Members g

model.global groups elements which may appear at any point within a TEI text. [1.3.]

Module tei

Used by address argument back bibl body byline cit closer date dictScrap div docImprint docTitle entry entryFree epigraph etym figure floatingText form front gramGrp group head hom imprint lg line list m macro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.phraseSeq.limited macro.specialPara opener postscript re sense series sourceDoc sp surface surfaceGrp table text time titlePage w xr zone

Members model.global.meta[index link linkGrp timeline join joinGrp alt altGrp substJoin listTranspose fs fLib fvLib span spanGrp interp interpGrp] model.milestoneLike[milestone gb pb lb cb anchor fw] model.noteLike[note] model.global.edit[gap addSpan damageSpan delSpan space] notatedMusic figure metamark

model.global.edit groups globally available elements which perform a specifically editorial function. [1.3.]

Module tei

Used by model.global

Members gap addSpan damageSpan delSpan space

model.global.meta groups globally available elements which describe the status of other elements. [1.3.]

Module tei

Used by model.global

Members index link linkGrp timeline join joinGrp alt altGrp substJoin listTranspose fs fLib fvLib span spanGrp interp interpGrp

Note Elements in this class are typically used to hold groups of links or of abstract interpretations, or by provide indications of certainty etc. It may find be convenient to localize all metadata elements, for example to contain them within the same division as the elements that they relate to; or to locate them all to a division of their own. They may however appear at any point in a TEI text.

model.glossLike groups elements which provide an alternative name, explanation, or description for any markup construct.

Module tei

Used by category joinGrp taxonomy

Members gloss

model.gramPart groups elements allowed within a <gramGrp> element in a dictionary. [9.3.2.]

Module dictionaries

Used by gramGrp model.formPart

Members model.morphLike[gram gen number case per tns mood iType] gramGrp pos subc colloc usg lbl

model.graphicLike groups elements containing images, formulae, and similar objects. [3.9.]

Module tei

Used by char facsimile figure formula glyph model.phrase sourceDoc surface table zone

Members media graphic binaryObject formula

model.headLike groups elements used to provide a title or heading at the start of a text division.

Module tei

Used by argument divGen figure listBibl model.divTopPart table

Members head

model.hiLike groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct but to which no specific function can be attributed. [3.3.]

Module tei

Used by formula model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase model.linePart w

Members hi

model.highlighted groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct. [3.3.]

Module tei

Used by bibl model.phrase

Members model.hiLike[hi] model.emphLike[foreign emph distinct mentioned soCalled gloss term title]

model.imprintPart groups the bibliographic elements which occur inside imprints. [3.11.]

Module tei

Used by imprint model.biblPart

Members publisher biblScope pubPlace distributor

model.inter groups elements which can appear either within or between paragraph-like elements. [1.3.]

Module tei

Used by dictScrap entryFree etym form gramGrp head macro.limitedContent macro.paraContent macro.specialPara model.common xr

Members model.egLike model.biblLike[bibl biblStruct biblFull] model.labelLike[desc label] model.listLike[list listBibl table] model.stageLike[stage] model.qLike[model.quoteLike[quote cit] said q floatingText]

model.lLike groups elements representing metrical components such as verse lines.

Module tei

Used by head lg model.divPart sp

Members l

model.labelLike groups elements used to gloss or explain other parts of a document.

Module tei

Used by application lg model.inter notatedMusic surface

Members desc label

model.limitedPhrase groups phrase-level elements excluding those elements primarily intended for transcription of existing sources. [1.3.]

Module tei

Used by catDesc creation macro.limitedContent macro.phraseSeq.limited

Members model.hiLike[hi] model.emphLike[foreign emph distinct mentioned soCalled gloss term title] model.pPart.editorial[choice abbr expan ex am subst] model.ptrLike[ptr ref] model.pPart.data[model.dateLike[date time] model.measureLike[num measure measureGrp] model.addressLike[email address] model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name] rs idno lang]]

model.linePart groups transcriptional elements which appear within lines or zones of a source-oriented transcription within a <sourceDoc> element.

Module tei

Used by line zone

Members model.segLike[seg s cl phr w m c pc] model.hiLike[hi] model.pPart.transcriptional[sic corr reg orig add del unclear damage handShift restore supplied surplus mod redo retrace undo] choice zone line

model.listLike groups list-like elements. [3.7.]

Module tei

Used by model.inter sourceDesc sp

Members list listBibl table

model.measureLike groups elements which denote a number, a quantity, a measurement, or similar piece of text that conveys some numerical meaning. [3.5.3.]

Module tei

Used by measureGrp model.pPart.data

Members num measure measureGrp

model.milestoneLike groups milestone-style elements used to represent reference systems. [1.3. 3.10.3.]

Module tei

Used by listBibl model.global subst

Members milestone gb pb lb cb anchor fw

model.morphLike groups elements which provide morphological information within a dictionary entry. [9.3.]

Module dictionaries

Used by dictScrap entryFree etym model.gramPart

Members gram gen number case per tns mood iType

model.msItemPart groups elements which can appear within a manuscript item description.

Module tei

Used by

Members model.quoteLike[quote cit] model.respLike[author editor respStmt meeting sponsor funder principal] model.msQuoteLike[title] bibl biblStruct listBibl textLang

model.msQuoteLike groups elements which represent passages such as titles quoted from a manuscript as a part of its description.

Module tei

Used by model.msItemPart

Members title

model.nameLike groups elements which name or refer to a person, place, or organization.

Module tei

Used by model.addrPart model.pPart.data

Members model.nameLike.agent[name] rs idno lang

Note A superset of the naming elements that may appear in datelines, addresses, statements of responsibility, etc.

model.nameLike.agent groups elements which contain names of individuals or corporate bodies. [3.5.]

Module tei

Used by model.nameLike respStmt setting

Members name

Note This class is used in the content model of elements which reference names of people or organizations.

model.noteLike groups globally-available note-like elements. [3.8.]

Module tei

Used by biblStruct char glyph model.global monogr notesStmt

Members note

model.pLike groups paragraph-like elements.

Module tei

Used by application availability cRefPattern calendar correction editionStmt editorialDecl encodingDesc hyphenation interpretation model.divPart normalization prefixDef projectDesc publicationStmt quotation refsDecl samplingDecl segmentation seriesStmt setting settingDesc sourceDesc sp stdVals styleDefDecl

Members p ab

model.pLike.front groups paragraph-like elements which can occur as direct constituents of front matter. [4.6.]

Module tei

Used by back front

Members head byline argument epigraph docTitle titlePart docAuthor docEdition docImprint docDate

model.pPart.data groups phrase-level elements containing names, dates, numbers, measures, and similar data. [3.5.]

Module tei

Used by bibl model.limitedPhrase model.phrase

Members model.dateLike[date time] model.measureLike[num measure measureGrp] model.addressLike[email address] model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name] rs idno lang]

model.pPart.edit groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial correction and transcription. [3.4.]

Module tei

Used by bibl model.phrase pc w

Members model.pPart.editorial[choice abbr expan ex am subst] model.pPart.transcriptional[sic corr reg orig add del unclear damage handShift restore supplied surplus mod redo retrace undo]

model.pPart.editorial groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial interventions that may be useful both in transcribing and in authoring. [3.4.]

Module tei

Used by model.limitedPhrase model.pPart.edit

Members choice abbr expan ex am subst

model.pPart.transcriptional groups phrase-level elements used for editorial transcription of pre-existing source materials. [3.4.]

Module tei

Used by am model.linePart model.pPart.edit

Members sic corr reg orig add del unclear damage handShift restore supplied surplus mod redo retrace undo

model.personPart groups elements which form part of the description of a person. [15.2.2.]

Module tei

Used by

Members bibl idno

model.phrase groups elements which can occur at the level of individual words or phrases. [1.3.]

Module tei

Used by byline closer date dictScrap docImprint entryFree etym form gramGrp head macro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.specialPara opener re sense time xr

Members model.segLike[seg s cl phr w m c pc] model.highlighted[model.hiLike[hi] model.emphLike[foreign emph distinct mentioned soCalled gloss term title]] model.graphicLike[media graphic binaryObject formula] model.pPart.edit[model.pPart.editorial[choice abbr expan ex am subst] model.pPart.transcriptional[sic corr reg orig add del unclear damage handShift restore supplied surplus mod redo retrace undo]] model.ptrLike[ptr ref] model.lPart model.pPart.data[model.dateLike[date time] model.measureLike[num measure measureGrp] model.addressLike[email address] model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name] rs idno lang]] model.ptrLike.form[oRef oVar pRef pVar]

Note This class of elements can occur only within larger elements of the class *inter* or *chunk*. In prose, this means these elements can occur within paragraphs, list items, lines of verse, etc.

model.profileDescPart groups elements which may be used inside <profileDesc> and appear multiple times.

Module tei

Used by profileDesc

Members creation langUsage textClass calendarDesc handNotes listTranspose textDesc settingDesc

model.ptrLike groups elements used for purposes of location and reference. [3.6.]

Module tei

Used by application bibl biblStruct cit entry model.limitedPhrase model.phrase notatedMusic relatedItem

Members ptr ref

model.ptrLike.form groups elements used for purposes of location of particular orthographic or pronunciation forms within a dictionary entry. [9.]

Module dictionaries

Used by model.phrase

Members oRef oVar pRef pVar

model.publicationStmtPart groups elements which may appear within the <publicationStmt> element of the TEI Header. [2.2.4.]

Module tei

Used by publicationStmt

Members address date publisher pubPlace distributor authority idno availability

model.qLike groups elements related to highlighting which can appear either within or between chunk-level elements. [3.3.]

Module tei

Used by cit model.inter sp

Members model.quoteLike[quote cit] said q floatingText

model.quoteLike groups elements used to directly contain quotations.

Module tei

Used by model.msItemPart model.qLike

Members quote cit

model.resourceLike groups non-textual elements which may appear together with a header and a text to constitute a TEI document. [1.3.]

Module tei

Used by TEI

Members facsimile sourceDoc fsdDecl

model.respLike groups elements which are used to indicate intellectual or other significant responsibility, for example within a bibliographic element.

Module tei

Used by editionStmt model.biblPart model.msItemPart titleStmt

Members author editor respStmt meeting sponsor funder principal

model.segLike groups elements used for arbitrary segmentation. [16.3. 17.1.]

Module tei

Used by bibl model.linePart model.phrase

Members seg s cl phr w m c pc

Note The principles on which segmentation is carried out, and any special codes or attribute values used, should be defined explicitly in the <segmentation> element of the <encodingDesc> within the associated TEI header.

model.settingPart groups elements used to describe the setting of a linguistic interaction.

Module tei

Used by setting

Members locale activity

model.stageLike groups elements containing stage directions or similar things defined by the module for performance texts. [7.3.]

Module tei

Used by lg model.inter sp

Members stage

Note Stage directions are members of class *inter*: that is, they can appear between or within component-level elements.

model.teiHeaderPart groups high level elements which may appear more than once in a TEI Header.

Module tei

Used by teiHeader

Members encodingDesc profileDesc

model.textDescPart groups elements used to categorize a text for example in terms of its situational parameters.

Module tei

Used by textDesc

Members channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction preparedness

model.titlepagePart groups elements which can occur as direct constituents of a title page, such as <docTitle>, <docAuthor>, <docImprint>, or <epigraph>. [4.6.]

Module tei

Used by titlePage

Members graphic binaryObject byline argument epigraph docTitle titlePart docAuthor imprimatur docEdition docImprint docDate

3 Attribute classes

att.ascribed provides attributes for elements representing speech or action that can be ascribed to a specific individual. [1.]

Module tei

Members said q sp change setting

Attributes Attributes

@who indicates the person, or group of people, to whom the element content is ascribed.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Values For transcribed speech, this will typically identify a participant or participant group; in other contexts, it will point to any identified `<person>` element.

In the following example from Hamlet, speeches (`<sp>`) in the body of the play are linked to `<castItem>` elements in the `<castList>` using the `who` attribute. **<castItem**

```
  type="role">
  <role
    xml:id="Barnardo">Bernardo</role>
</castItem>
<castItem
  type="role">
  <role
    xml:id="Francisco">Francisco</role>
  <roleDesc>a soldier</roleDesc>
</castItem>
<sp
  who="#Barnardo">
  <speaker>Bernardo</speaker>
  <l
    n="1">Who's there?</l>
</sp>
<sp
  who="#Francisco">
  <speaker>Francisco</speaker>
  <l
    n="2">Nay, answer me: stand, and unfold yourself.</l>
</sp>
```

att.breaking provides an attribute to indicate whether or not the element concerned is considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace. [3.10.3.]

Module tei

Members milestone gb pb lb cb

Attributes Attributes

@break indicates whether or not the element bearing this attribute should be considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace.

Status Recommended

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Sample values include **yes** the element bearing this attribute is considered to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace

no the element bearing this attribute is considered not to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace

maybe no assertion is made as to whether or not the element bearing this attribute is considered to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token.

In the following lines from the ‘Dream of the Rood’, linebreaks occur in the middle of the words *lādost* and *reord-berendum*. **<ab>**
 ...epesa tome iu icpæs 3eporden pita heardoft . leodum la<b
 break="no"/>
 ðost ærþan ichim lifes pē3 rihtne 3erymde reord be<b
 break="no"/>
 rendum hƿæt me þa3eƿeorðode puldres ealdor ofer...
 </ab>

att.cReferencing provides an attribute which may be used to supply a *canonical reference* as a means of identifying the target of a pointer.

Module tei

Members gloss term ptr ref

Attributes Attributes

@cRef (canonical reference) specifies the destination of the pointer by supplying a canonical reference from a scheme defined in a <refsDecl> element in the TEI header

Status Optional

Datatype data.text

Values the value of cRef should be constructed so that when the algorithm for the resolution of canonical references (described in section 16.2.6.) is applied to it the result is a valid URI reference to the intended target

Note The <refsDecl> to use may be indicated with the decls attribute. Currently these Guidelines only provide for a single canonical reference to be encoded on any given <ptr> element.

att.canonical provides attributes which can be used to associate a representation such as a name or title with canonical information about the object being named or referenced.

Module tei

Members att.naming[att.personal[name] rs author editor pubPlace] term resp title docTitle docAuthor

Attributes Attributes

@key provides an externally-defined means of identifying the entity (or entities) being named, using a coded value of some kind.

Status Optional

Datatype data.text

<author>

<name

key="name 427308"

type="organisation">[New Zealand Parliament, Legislative

Council]</name>
</author>

Note The value may be a unique identifier from a database, or any other externally-defined string identifying the referent.

@ref (reference) provides an explicit means of locating a full definition for the entity being named by means of one or more URIs.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Note The value must point directly to one or more XML elements by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied, the implication is that the name identifies several distinct entities.

att.coordinated elements which can be positioned within a two dimensional coordinate system.

Module transcr

Members surface surfaceGrp zone line

Attributes Attributes

@start indicates the element within a transcription of the text containing at least the start of the writing represented by this zone or surface.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.pointer`

@ulx gives the x coordinate value for the upper left corner of a rectangular space.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.numeric`

@uly gives the y coordinate value for the upper left corner of a rectangular space.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.numeric`

@lrx gives the x coordinate value for the lower right corner of a rectangular space.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.numeric`

@lry gives the y coordinate value for the lower right corner of a rectangular space.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.numeric`

att.damaged provides attributes describing the nature of any physical damage affecting a reading. [1.3.1.]

Module tei

Members damage damageSpan

Attributes Attributes att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@precision*, *@scope*) (*att.ranging* (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*))

@hand in the case of damage (deliberate defacement, inking out, etc.) assignable to a distinct hand, signifies the hand responsible for the damage.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.pointer`

Values must be one of the hand identifiers declared in the document header (see section 11.3.2.1.).

@agent categorizes the cause of the damage, if it can be identified.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Sample values include: **rubbing** damage results from rubbing of the leaf edges

mildew damage results from mildew on the leaf surface

smoke damage results from smoke

@degree signifies the degree of damage according to a convenient scale. The `<damage>` tag with the degree attribute should only be used where the text may be read with some confidence; text supplied from other sources should be tagged as `<supplied>`.

Status Optional

Datatype

`data.probability | data.certainty`

Values a coded representation of the degree of damage, either as a number between 0 (undamaged) and 1 (very extensively damaged), or as one of the codes high, medium, low.

Note The `<damage>` tag with the degree attribute should only be used where the text may be read with confidence despite the damage. It is appropriate where it is desired to record the fact of damage, though this has not affected the readability of the text (as may be the case with weathered inscriptional materials). Where the damage has rendered the text more or less illegible either the `<unclear>` tag (for partial illegibility) or the `<gap>` tag (for complete illegibility, with no text supplied) should be used, with the information concerning the damage given in the attribute values of these tags. See section 11.3.3.2. for discussion of the use of these tags in particular circumstances.

@group assigns an arbitrary number to each stretch of damage regarded as forming part of the same physical phenomenon.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.count`

att.dateable provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dates, times, or dateable events.

Module tei

Members name date time licence application creation change

Attributes Attributes att.dateable.w3c (*@when*, *@notBefore*, *@notAfter*, *@from*, *@to*)

@calendar indicates the system or calendar to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.pointer`

Schematron `<sch:rule context="tei:*[@calendar]">`

<sch:assert test="string-length(.) gt 0">@calendar indicates the system or calendar to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs, but this <sch:name/> element has no textual content.</sch:assert></sch:rule>

He was born on <date
calendar="#Gregorian">Feb. 22, 1732</date>
(<date
calendar="#Julian"
when="1732-02-22"> Feb. 11, 1731/32, O.S.</date>).

@period supplies a pointer to some location defining a named period of time within which the datable item is understood to have occurred.

Status Optional

Datatype data.pointer

Note This ‘superclass’ provides attributes that can be used to provide normalized values of temporal information. By default, the attributes from the `att.datable.w3c` class are provided. If the module for names & dates is loaded, this class also provides attributes from the `att.datable.iso` and `att.datable.custom` classes. In general, the possible values of attributes restricted to the W3C datatypes form a subset of those values available via the ISO 8601 standard. However, the greater expressiveness of the ISO datatypes may not be needed, and there exists much greater software support for the W3C datatypes.

att.datable.w3c provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events using the W3C datatypes. [3.5.4. 13.3.6.]

Module `tei`

Members `att.datable[name date time licence application creation change]`

Attributes Attributes

@when supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

Status Optional

Datatype data.temporal.w3c

Values A normalized form of temporal expression conforming to the *W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*.

Examples of W3C date, time, and date & time formats. <p>

```
<date  
  when="1945-10-24">24 Oct 45</date>  
<date  
  when="1996-09-24T07:25:00Z">September 24th, 1996 at 3:25  
in the morning</date>  
<time  
  when="1999-01-04T20:42:00-05:00">Jan 4 1999 at 8  
pm</time>  
<time  
  when="14:12:38">fourteen twelve and 38 seconds</time>  
<date  
  when="1962-10">October of 1962</date>  
<date  
  when="--06-12">June 12th</date>  
<date  
  when="---01">the first of the month</date>  
<date  
  when="--08">August</date>  
<date
```



```

    when="2006">MMVI</date>
<date
  when="0056">AD 56</date>
<date
  when="-0056">56 BC</date>
</p>
This list begins in
the year 1632, more precisely on Trinity Sunday, i.e. the
Sunday after
Pentecost, in that year the <date
  calendar="#Julian"
  when="1632-06-06">27th of May (old style)</date>.
<opener>
<dateline>
  <placeName>Dorchester, Village,</placeName>
  <date
    when="1828-03-02">March 2d. 1828.</date>
</dateline>
<salute>To
  Mrs. Cornell,</salute> Sunday <time
    when="12:00:00">noon.</time>
</opener>

```

Note The value of the when attribute should be the normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*, using the Gregorian calendar. The most commonly-encountered format for the date part of the when attribute is yyyy-mm-dd, but yyyy, --mm, --dd, yyyy-mm, or --mm-dd may also be used. For the time part, the form hh:mm:ss is used. Note that this format does not currently permit use of the value 0000 to represent the year 1 BCE; instead the value -0001 should be used.

@notBefore specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.temporal.w3c`

Values A normalized form of temporal expression conforming to the *W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*.

@notAfter specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.temporal.w3c`

Values A normalized form of temporal expression conforming to the *W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*.

@from indicates the starting point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.temporal.w3c`

Values A normalized form of temporal expression conforming to the *W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*.

@to indicates the ending point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.temporal.w3c`

Values A normalized form of temporal expression conforming to the *W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*.

att.datcat introduces `dcr:datacat` and `dcr:ValueDatacat` attributes that may be used to align XML elements or attributes with the appropriate Data Categories (DCs) defined by the ISO 12620:2009 standard and stored in the Web repository called ISOcat at <http://www.isocat.org/>. [9.5.2. 18.3.]

Module `tei`

Members `att.segLike[seg s cl phr w m c pc]` `att.lexicographic[entryFree hom sense form orth pron hyph syll gram gen number case per tns mood iType gramGrp pos subc colloc def etym lang usg lbl xr re oRef oVar pRef pVar]` `fs f binary symbol numeric string`

Attributes `Attributes`

@datcat contains a PID (persistent identifier) that aligns the given element with the appropriate Data Category (or categories) in ISOcat.

Status `Optional`

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

@valueDatcat contains a PID (persistent identifier) that aligns the content of the given element or the value of the given attribute with the appropriate simple Data Category (or categories) in ISOcat.

Status `Optional`

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Example In this example `dcr:datacat` relates the feature name to the data category "partOfSpeech" and `dcr:valueDatcat` the feature value to the data category "commonNoun". Both these data categories reside in the ISOcat DCR at www.isocat.org, which is the DCR used by ISO TC37 and hosted by its registration authority, the MPI for Psycholinguistics in Nijmegen.

```
<fs
  xmlns:dcr="http://www.isocat.org/ns/dcr">
  <f
    dcr:datacat="http://www.isocat.org/datcat/DC-1345"
    dcr:valueDatcat="http://www.isocat.org/datcat/DC-1256"
    fVal="common noun"
    name="POS"/>
  </fs>
```

Note ISO 12620:2009 is a standard describing the data model and procedures for a Data Category Registry (DCR). Data categories are defined as elementary descriptors in a linguistic structure. In the DCR data model each data category gets assigned a unique Persistent Identifier (PID), i.e., an URI. Linguistic resources or preferably their schemas that make use of data categories from a DCR should refer to them using this PID. For XML-based resources, like TEI documents, ISO 12620:2009 normative Annex A gives a small Data Category Reference XML vocabulary (also available online at <http://www.isocat.org/12620/>), which provides two attributes, `dcr:datacat` and `dcr:valueDatcat`.

att.declarable provides attributes for those elements in the TEI Header which may be independently selected by means of the special purpose `decls` attribute. [15.3.]

Module `tei`

Members `bibl biblStruct listBibl availability sourceDesc biblFull projectDesc samplingDecl`

editorialDecl correction normalization quotation hyphenation segmentation stdVals
 interpretation styleDefDecl refsDecl geoDecl langUsage textClass textDesc
 settingDesc

Attributes Attributes

@default indicates whether or not this element is selected by default when its parent is selected.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.truthValue`

Legal values are: **true** This element is selected if its parent is selected

false This element can only be selected explicitly, unless it is the only one of its kind, in which case it is selected if its parent is selected.[Default]

Note The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter 15.3.. Only one element of a particular type may have a default attribute with a value of true.

att.declaring provides attributes for elements which may be independently associated with a particular declarable element within the header, thus overriding the inherited default for that element. [15.3.]

Module tei

Members p gloss term ptr ref media graphic lg text body group floatingText div front back ab facsimile sourceDoc surface surfaceGrp

Attributes Attributes

@decls identifies one or more *declarable elements* within the header, which are understood to apply to the element bearing this attribute and its content.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Values must identify a set of declarable elements of different types.

Note The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter 15.3..

att.dimensions provides attributes for describing the size of physical objects.

Module tei

Members att.damaged[damage damageSpan] att.editLike[att.transcriptional[add del addSpan delSpan restore subst substJoin mod redo retrace undo] corr reg gap unclear name date time expan ex am supplied surplus] space

Attributes Attributes att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*)

@unit names the unit used for the measurement

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Suggested values include: **cm** (centimetres)

mm (millimetres)

in (inches)

lines lines of text

chars (characters) characters of text

@quantity specifies the length in the units specified

Status Optional

Datatype `data.numeric`

@extent indicates the size of the object concerned using a project-specific vocabulary combining quantity and units in a single string of words.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.text`

Values any measurement phrase, e.g. *25 letters, 2 × 3 inches.*

```
<gap  
  extent="5 words"/>
```

```
<height  
  extent="half the page"/>
```

@precision characterizes the precision of the values specified by the other attributes.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.certainty`

@scope where the measurement summarizes more than one observation, specifies the applicability of this measurement.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Sample values include: **all** measurement applies to all instances.

most measurement applies to most of the instances inspected.

range measurement applies to only the specified range of instances.

att.divLike provides attributes common to all elements which behave in the same way as divisions. [4.]

Module `tei`

Members `lg div`

Attributes Attributes `att.fragmentable (@part)`

@org (organization) specifies how the content of the division is organized.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Legal values are: **composite** composite content: i.e. no claim is made about the sequence in which the immediate contents of this division are to be processed, or their inter-relationships.

uniform uniform content: i.e. the immediate contents of this element are regarded as forming a logical unit, to be processed in sequence.[Default]

@sample indicates whether this division is a sample of the original source and if so, from which part.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Legal values are: **initial** division lacks material present at end in source.

medial division lacks material at start and end.

final division lacks material at start.

unknown position of sampled material within original unknown.

complete division is not a sample. [Default]

att.docStatus provides attributes for use on metadata elements describing the status of a document.

Module tei

Members bibl biblStruct biblFull revisionDesc change

Attributes Attributes

@status describes the status of a document either currently or, when associated with a dated element, at the time indicated.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Sample values include: **approved**

candidate

cleared

deprecated

draft [Default]

embargoed

expired

frozen

galley

proposed

published

recommendation

submitted

unfinished

withdrawn

Example

```
<revisionDesc status="published">
  <change status="published" when="2010-10-21"/>
  <change status="cleared" when="2010-10-02"/>
  <change status="embargoed" when="2010-08-02"/>
  <change status="frozen" when="2010-05-01" who="#MSM"/>
  <change status="draft" when="2010-03-01" who="#LB"/>
</revisionDesc>
```

att.editLike provides attributes describing the nature of an encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind. [1.]

Module tei

Members att.transcriptional[add del addSpan delSpan restore subst substJoin mod redo retrace undo] corr reg gap unclear name date time expan ex am supplied surplus

Attributes Attributes att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@precision*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*)) att.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)

@evidence indicates the nature of the evidence supporting the reliability or accuracy of the intervention or interpretation.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.enumerated` separated by whitespace

Suggested values include: **internal** there is internal evidence to support the intervention.

external there is external evidence to support the intervention.

conjecture the intervention or interpretation has been made by the editor, cataloguer, or scholar on the basis of their expertise.

@source contains a list of one or more pointers indicating sources supporting the given intervention or interpretation.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Values A space-delimited series of sigla; each sigil should correspond to a witness or witness group and occur as the value of the `xml:id` attribute on a `<witness>` or `<msDesc>` element elsewhere in the document.

@instant indicates whether this is an instant revision or not.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.xTruthValue`

Default false

Note The members of this attribute class are typically used to represent any kind of editorial intervention in a text, for example a correction or interpretation, or to date or localize manuscripts etc.

att.edition provides attributes identifying the source edition from which some encoded feature derives.

Module tei

Members milestone pb lb cb refState

Attributes Attributes

@ed (edition) supplies an arbitrary identifier for the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break) occurs at this point in the text.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.code` separated by whitespace

Values A string of characters or sigil used conventionally to identify the edition.

@edRef (edition reference) provides a pointer to the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break) occurs at this point in the text.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Example

```
<l>Of Mans First Disobedience,<lb ed="1674"/> and<lb ed="1667"/> the
Fruit</l>
<l>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose<lb ed="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</l>
<l>Brought Death into the World,<lb ed="1667"/> and all<lb ed="1674"/> our
woe,</l>
```

Example

```
<listBibl>
  <bibl xml:id="stapledon1937">
    <author>Olaf Stapledon</author>,
    <title>Starmaker</title>, <publisher>Methuen</publisher>,
  <date>1937</date>
  </bibl>
  <bibl xml:id="stapledon1968">
    <author>Olaf Stapledon</author>,
    <title>Starmaker</title>, <publisher>Dover</publisher>, <date>1968</date>
  </bibl>
</listBibl>
<p>Looking into the future aeons from the supreme moment of
the cosmos, I saw the populations still with all their
strength maintaining the<pb edRef="#stapledon1968" n="411"/>essentials of
their ancient culture,
still living their personal lives in zest and endless
novelty of action, ... I saw myself still
preserving, though with increasing difficulty, my lucid
con-<pb edRef="#stapledon1937" n="291"/>sciousness;</p>
```

att.entryLike groups the different styles of dictionary entries. [9.1. 9.2.]

Module dictionaries

Members superEntry entry entryFree

Attributes Attributes

@type indicates type of entry, in dictionaries with multiple types.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Suggested values include: **main** a main entry (default).[Default]

hom (homograph) groups information relating to one homograph within an entry.

xref (cross reference) a reduced entry whose only function is to point to another main entry (e.g. for forms of an irregular verb or for variant spellings: *was* pointing to *be*, or *esthete* to *aesthete*).

affix an entry for a prefix, infix, or suffix.

abbr (abbreviation) an entry for an abbreviation.

supplemental a supplemental entry (for use in dictionaries which issue supplements to their main work in which they include updated information about entries).

foreign an entry for a foreign word in a monolingual dictionary.

Note The global *n* attribute may be used to encode the homograph numbers attached to entries for homographs.

att.fragmentable groups structural elements which may be fragmented, usually as a consequence of some overlapping hierarchy.

Module tei

Members att.divLike[lg div] att.segLike[seg s cl phr w m c pc] p l ab

Attributes Attributes

@part specifies whether or not its parent element is fragmented in some way, typically by some other overlapping structure : for example a speech which is divided between two or more verse stanzas, a paragraph which is split across a page division, a verse line which is divided between two speakers.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Legal values are: **Y** (yes) the element is fragmented in some (unspecified) respect

N (no) either the element is not fragmented, or no claim is made as to its completeness.[Default]

I (initial) this is the initial part of a fragmented element

M (medial) this is a medial part of a fragmented element

F (final) this is the final part of a fragmented element

Note The values I, M, or F should be used only where it is clear how the element may be reconstituted.

att.global provides attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme.
[1.3.1.1.]

Module tei

Members p foreign emph hi distinct said quote q cit mentioned soCalled desc gloss term sic corr choice reg orig gap add del unclear name rs email address addrLine street postCode postBox num measure measureGrp date time abbr expan ptr ref list item label head headLabel headItem note index media graphic binaryObject milestone gb pb lb cb analytic monogr series author editor respStmt resp title meeting imprint publisher biblScope citedRange pubPlace bibl biblStruct listBibl relatedItem l lg sp speaker stage teiCorpus divGen textLang teiHeader fileDesc titleStmt sponsor funder principal editionStmt edition extent publicationStmt distributor authority idno availability licence seriesStmt notesStmt sourceDesc biblFull encodingDesc projectDesc samplingDecl editorialDecl correction normalization quotation hyphenation segmentation stdVals interpretation tagsDecl tagUsage namespace rendition styleDefDecl refsDecl cRefPattern prefixDef listPrefixDef refState classDecl taxonomy category catDesc geoDecl appInfo application profileDesc handNote creation langUsage language textClass keywords classCode catRef calendarDesc calendar revisionDesc change listChange TEI text body group floatingText div trailer byline dateline argument epigraph opener closer salute signed postscript titlePage docTitle titlePart docAuthor imprimatur docEdition docImprint docDate front back link linkGrp ab anchor seg when timeline join joinGrp alt altGrp g char charName charProp charDecl glyph glyphName localName mapping unicodeName value superEntry entry entryFree hom sense dictScrap form orth pron hyph syll stress gram gen number case per tns mood iType gramGrp pos subc colloc def etym lang usg lbl xr re oRef oVar pRef pVar table row cell formula notatedMusic figure figDesc facsimile sourceDoc surface surfaceGrp zone addSpan damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handNotes handShift am restore space subst substJoin supplied

surplus line listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace transpose undo textDesc
 settingDesc channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction
 preparedness purpose setting locale activity fsdDecl fsDecl fsDescr fsdLink fDecl
 fDescr vRange vDefault if then fsConstraints cond bicond iff fs f binary symbol
 numeric string vLabel vColl default vAlt vNot vMerge fLib fvLib s cl phr w m c pc
 span spanGrp interp interpGrp

Attributes Attributes att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*,
@prev, *@exclude*, *@select*) att.global.analytic (*@ana*) att.global.facs (*@facs*)
 att.global.change (*@change*)

@xml:id (identifier) provides a unique identifier for the element bearing the
 attribute.

Status Optional

Datatype **xsd:ID**

Note The xml:id attribute may be used to specify a canonical reference
 for an element; see section 3.10..

@n (number) gives a number (or other label) for an element, which is not
 necessarily unique within the document.

Status Optional

Datatype **data.text**

Values the value consists of a single token which may however contain
 punctuation characters, whitespace or word separating characters.
 It need not be restricted to numbers.

Note The n attribute may be used to specify the numbering of chapters,
 sections, list items, etc.; it may also be used in the specification of a
 standard reference system for the text.

@xml:lang (language) indicates the language of the element content using a ‘tag’
 generated according to BCP 47.

Status Optional

Datatype **data.language**

Values The value must conform to BCP 47. If the value is a private use
 code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a <language> element
 with a matching value for its ident attribute should be supplied in
 the TEI Header to document this value. Such documentation may
 also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these
 must remain consistent with their (IETF)Internet Engineering Task
 Force definitions.

<p> ... The consequences of
 this rapid depopulation were the loss of the last
<foreign>
 xml:lang="rap">ariki</foreign> or chief
 (Routledge 1920:205,210) and their connections to
 ancestral territorial organization.</p>

Note the xml:lang value will be inherited from the immediately
 enclosing element, or from its parent, and so on up the
 document hierarchy. It is generally good practice to specify
 xml:lang at the highest appropriate level, noticing that a
 different default may be needed for the teiHeader from that
 needed for the associated resource element or elements, and
 that a single TEI document may contain texts in many
 languages. The authoritative list of registered language
 subtags is maintained by IANA and is available at
<http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry>.

For a good general overview of the construction of language tags, see <http://www.w3.org/International/articles/language-tags/>, and for a practical step-by-step guide, see <http://www.w3.org/International/questions/qa-choosing-language-tags>.

@rend (rendition) indicates how the element in question was rendered or presented in the source text.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.word` separated by whitespace

Values may contain any number of tokens, each of which may contain letters, punctuation marks, or symbols, but not whitespace or word-separating characters.

```
<head
  rend="align(center) case(allcaps)">
  <lb/>To The <lb/>Duchesse <lb/>of <lb/>Newcastle,
<lb/>On Her <lb/>
  <hi
    rend="case(mixed)">New Blazing-World</hi>.
</head>
```

Note These Guidelines make no binding recommendations for the values of the `rend` attribute; the characteristics of visual presentation vary too much from text to text and the decision to record or ignore individual characteristics varies too much from project to project. Some potentially useful conventions are noted from time to time at appropriate points in the Guidelines. The values of the `rend` attribute are a set of sequence-indeterminate individual tokens separated by whitespace.

@style contains an expression in some formal style definition language which defines the rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text

Status Optional

Datatype `data.text`

```
<head
  style="text-align: center; font-variant: small-caps">
  <lb/>To The <lb/>Duchesse <lb/>of <lb/>Newcastle, <lb/>On
Her
<lb/>
  <hi
    style="font-variant: normal">New Blazing-World</hi>.
</head>
```

Note Unlike the attribute values of `rend`, the `style` attribute may contain whitespace. This attribute is intended for recording inline stylistic information concerning the source, not any particular output. The formal language in which values for this attribute are expressed may be specified using the `<styleDefDecl>` element in the TEI Header.

@rendition points to a description of the rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

```
<head
  rendition="#ac #sc">
  <lb/>To The <lb/>Duchesse <lb/>of <lb/>Newcastle, <lb/>On
Her
<lb/>
  <hi
```

```

rendition="#no">New Blazing-World</hi>.
</head>
<rendition
  scheme="css"
  xml:id="sc">font-variant: small-caps</rendition>
<rendition
  scheme="css"
  xml:id="no">font-variant: normal</rendition>
<rendition
  scheme="css"
  xml:id="ac">text-align: center</rendition>

```

Note The rendition attribute is used in a very similar way to the class attribute defined for XHTML but with the important distinction that its function is to describe the appearance of the source text, not necessarily to determine how that text should be presented on screen or paper. Where both rendition and rend are supplied, the latter is understood to override or complement the former. Each URI provided should indicate a <rendition> element defining the intended rendition in terms of some appropriate style language, as indicated by the scheme attribute.

@xml:base provides a base URI reference with which applications can resolve relative URI references into absolute URI references.

Status Optional

Datatype data.pointer

```

<div
  type="bibl">
  <head>Bibliography</head>
  <listBibl
    xml:base="http://www.lib.ucdavis.edu/BWRP/Works/">
  <bibl
    n=" 1">
    <author>
      <name>Landon, Letitia Elizabeth</name>
    </author>
    <ref
      target="LandLVowOf.sgm">
      <title>The Vow of the Peacock</title>
    </ref>
  </bibl>
  <bibl
    n=" 2">
    <author>
      <name>Compton, Margaret Clephane</name>
    </author>
    <ref
      target="NortMIrene.sgm">
      <title>Irene, a Poem in Six Cantos</title>
    </ref>
  </bibl>
  <bibl
    n=" 3">
    <author>
      <name>Taylor, Jane</name>
    </author>
    <ref
      target="TaylJEssay.sgm">
      <title>Essays in Rhyme on Morals and Manners</title>
    </ref>
  </bibl>

```

```
</listBibl>
</div>
```

@xml:space signals an intention about how white space should be managed by applications.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Legal values are: **default** signals that the application's default white-space processing modes are acceptable

preserve indicates the intent that applications preserve all white space

Note The XML specification provides further guidance on the use of this attribute. Note that many parsers may not handle xml:space correctly.

att.global.analytic provides additional global attributes for associating specific analyses or interpretations with appropriate portions of a text. [17.3.]

Module analysis

Members att.global[p foreign emph hi distinct said quote q cit mentioned soCalled desc gloss term sic corr choice reg orig gap add del unclear name rs email address addrLine street postCode postBox num measure measureGrp date time abbr expan ptr ref list item label head headLabel headItem note index media graphic binaryObject milestone gb pb lb cb analytic monogr series author editor respStmt resp title meeting imprint publisher biblScope citedRange pubPlace bibl biblStruct listBibl relatedItem l lg sp speaker stage teiCorpus divGen textLang teiHeader fileDesc titleStmt sponsor funder principal editionStmt edition extent publicationStmt distributor authority idno availability licence seriesStmt notesStmt sourceDesc biblFull encodingDesc projectDesc samplingDecl editorialDecl correction normalization quotation hyphenation segmentation stdVals interpretation tagsDecl tagUsage namespace rendition styleDefDecl refsDecl cRefPattern prefixDef listPrefixDef refState classDecl taxonomy category catDesc geoDecl appInfo application profileDesc handNote creation langUsage language textClass keywords classCode catRef calendarDesc calendar revisionDesc change listChange TEI text body group floatingText div trailer byline dateline argument epigraph opener closer salute signed postscript titlePage docTitle titlePart docAuthor imprimatur docEdition docImprint docDate front back link linkGrp ab anchor seg when timeline join joinGrp alt altGrp g char charName charProp charDecl glyph glyphName localName mapping unicodeName value superEntry entry entryFree hom sense dictScrap form orth pron hyph syll stress gram gen number case per tns mood iType gramGrp pos subc colloc def etym lang usg lbl xr re oRef oVar pRef pVar table row cell formula notatedMusic figure figDesc facsimile sourceDoc surface surfaceGrp zone addSpan damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handNotes handShift am restore space subst substJoin supplied surplus line listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace transpose undo textDesc settingDesc channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction preparedness purpose setting locale activity fsdDecl fsDecl fsDescr fsdLink fDecl fDescr vRange vDefault if then fsConstraints cond bicond iff fs f binary symbol numeric string vLabel vColl default vAlt vNot vMerge fLib fvLib s cl phr w m c pc span spanGrp interp interpGrp]

Attributes Attributes

@ana (analysis) indicates one or more elements containing interpretations of the element on which the ana attribute appears.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Values one or more valid identifiers of one or more interpretive elements (usually `<fs>` or `<interp>`), separated by white space.

Note When multiple values are given, they may reflect either multiple divergent interpretations of an ambiguous text, or multiple mutually consistent interpretations of the same passage in different contexts.

att.global.change supplies the change attribute, allowing its member elements to specify one or more states or revision campaigns with which they are associated.

Module transcr

Members att.global[p foreign emph hi distinct said quote q cit mentioned soCalled desc gloss term sic corr choice reg orig gap add del unclear name rs email address addrLine street postCode postBox num measure measureGrp date time abbr expan ptr ref list item label head headLabel headItem note index media graphic binaryObject milestone gb pb lb cb analytic monogr series author editor respStmt resp title meeting imprint publisher biblScope citedRange pubPlace bibl biblStruct listBibl relatedItem l lg sp speaker stage teiCorpus divGen textLang teiHeader fileDesc titleStmt sponsor funder principal editionStmt edition extent publicationStmt distributor authority idno availability licence seriesStmt notesStmt sourceDesc biblFull encodingDesc projectDesc samplingDecl editorialDecl correction normalization quotation hyphenation segmentation stdVals interpretation tagsDecl tagUsage namespace rendition styleDefDecl refsDecl cRefPattern prefixDef listPrefixDef refState classDecl taxonomy category catDesc geoDecl appInfo application profileDesc handNote creation langUsage language textClass keywords classCode catRef calendarDesc calendar revisionDesc change listChange TEI text body group floatingText div trailer byline dateline argument epigraph opener closer salute signed postscript titlePage docTitle titlePart docAuthor imprimatur docEdition docImprint docDate front back link linkGrp ab anchor seg when timeline join joinGrp alt altGrp g char charName charProp charDecl glyph glyphName localName mapping unicodeName value superEntry entry entryFree hom sense dictScrap form orth pron hyph syll stress gram gen number case per tns mood iType gramGrp pos subc colloc def etym lang usg lbl xr re oRef oVar pRef pVar table row cell formula notatedMusic figure figDesc facsimile sourceDoc surface surfaceGrp zone addSpan damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handNotes handShift am restore space subst substJoin supplied surplus line listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace transpose undo textDesc settingDesc channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction preparedness purpose setting locale activity fsdDecl fsDecl fsDescr fsdLink fDecl fDescr vRange vDefault if then fsConstraints cond bicond iff fs f binary symbol numeric string vLabel vColl default vAlt vNot vMerge fLib fvLib s cl phr w m c pc span spanGrp interp interpGrp]

Attributes Attributes

@change points to one or more `<change>` elements documenting a state or revision campaign to which the element bearing this attribute and its children have been assigned by the encoder.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

att.global.facs groups elements corresponding with all or part of an image, because they contain an alternative representation of it, typically but not necessarily a transcription of it. [11.1.]

Module transcr

Members att.global[p foreign emph hi distinct said quote q cit mentioned soCalled desc gloss term sic corr choice reg orig gap add del unclear name rs email address addrLine street postCode postBox num measure measureGrp date time abbr expan ptr ref list item label head headLabel headItem note index media graphic binaryObject milestone gb pb lb cb analytic monogr series author editor respStmt resp title meeting imprint publisher biblScope citedRange pubPlace bibl biblStruct listBibl relatedItem l lg sp speaker stage teiCorpus divGen textLang teiHeader fileDesc titleStmt sponsor funder principal editionStmt edition extent publicationStmt distributor authority idno availability licence seriesStmt notesStmt sourceDesc biblFull encodingDesc projectDesc samplingDecl editorialDecl correction normalization quotation hyphenation segmentation stdVals interpretation tagsDecl tagUsage namespace rendition styleDefDecl refsDecl cRefPattern prefixDef listPrefixDef refState classDecl taxonomy category catDesc geoDecl appInfo application profileDesc handNote creation langUsage language textClass keywords classCode catRef calendarDesc calendar revisionDesc change listChange TEI text body group floatingText div trailer byline dateline argument epigraph opener closer salute signed postscript titlePage docTitle titlePart docAuthor imprimatur docEdition docImprint docDate front back link linkGrp ab anchor seg when timeline join joinGrp alt altGrp g char charName charProp charDecl glyph glyphName localName mapping unicodeName value superEntry entry entryFree hom sense dictScrap form orth pron hyph syll stress gram gen number case per tns mood iType gramGrp pos subc colloc def etym lang usg lbl xr re oRef oVar pRef pVar table row cell formula notatedMusic figure figDesc facsimile sourceDoc surface surfaceGrp zone addSpan damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handNotes handShift am restore space subst substJoin supplied surplus line listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace transpose undo textDesc settingDesc channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction preparedness purpose setting locale activity fsdDecl fsDecl fsDescr fsdLink fDecl fDescr vRange vDefault if then fsConstraints cond bicond iff fs f binary symbol numeric string vLabel vColl default vAlt vNot vMerge fLib fvLib s cl phr w m c pc span spanGrp interp interpGrp]

Attributes Attributes

@facs (facsimile) points to all or part of an image which corresponds with the content of the element.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

att.global.linking defines a set of attributes for hypertext and other linking, which are enabled for all elements when the additional tag set for linking is selected. [16.]

Module linking

Members att.global[p foreign emph hi distinct said quote q cit mentioned soCalled desc gloss term sic corr choice reg orig gap add del unclear name rs email address addrLine street postCode postBox num measure measureGrp date time abbr expan ptr ref list item label head headLabel headItem note index media graphic binaryObject milestone gb pb lb cb analytic monogr series author editor respStmt resp title meeting imprint publisher biblScope citedRange pubPlace bibl biblStruct listBibl relatedItem l lg sp speaker stage teiCorpus divGen textLang teiHeader fileDesc titleStmt sponsor funder principal editionStmt edition extent publicationStmt distributor authority idno availability licence seriesStmt notesStmt sourceDesc biblFull encodingDesc projectDesc samplingDecl editorialDecl correction normalization quotation hyphenation segmentation stdVals interpretation tagsDecl tagUsage namespace rendition styleDefDecl refsDecl cRefPattern prefixDef listPrefixDef refState classDecl taxonomy category catDesc geoDecl appInfo application profileDesc handNote creation langUsage language textClass keywords classCode catRef calendarDesc calendar revisionDesc change listChange TEI text body group floatingText div trailer byline dateline argument epigraph opener closer salute signed postscript titlePage docTitle titlePart docAuthor imprimatur docEdition docImprint docDate front back link linkGrp ab anchor seg when timeline join joinGrp alt altGrp g char charName charProp charDecl glyph glyphName localName mapping unicodeName value superEntry entry entryFree hom sense dictScrap form orth pron hyph syll stress gram gen number case per tns mood iType gramGrp pos subc colloc def etym lang usg lbl xr re oRef oVar pRef pVar table row cell formula notatedMusic figure figDesc facsimile sourceDoc surface surfaceGrp zone addSpan damage damageSpan delSpan ex fw handNotes handShift am restore space subst substJoin supplied surplus line listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace transpose undo textDesc settingDesc channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction preparedness purpose setting locale activity fsdDecl fsDecl fsDescr fsdLink fDecl fDescr vRange vDefault if then fsConstraints cond bicond iff fs f binary symbol numeric string vLabel vColl default vAlt vNot vMerge fLib fvLib s cl phr w m c pc span spanGrp interp interpGrp]

Attributes Attributes

@corresp (corresponds) points to elements that correspond to the current element in some way.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

```
<p> In order to meet your instructions more fully on that
subject,
I directed <persName
  corresp="personography.xml#pemberton_jd">Mr Surveyor
Pemberton</persName>
to draw up a report describing in a general manner the
existing arrangements for the sale of
land on <placeName
  corresp="placeography.xml#vancouver_island">Vancouver's
Island</placeName>,
and the proposed arrangements for the sale of land in
<placeName
  corresp="placeography.xml#british_columbia">British
Columbia</placeName>.
</p>
<group>
<text
  xml:id="t1-g1-t1"
```

```
    xml:lang="mi">
  <body
    xml:id="t1-g1-t1-body1">
  <div
    type="chapter">
    <head>He Whakamaramatanga mo te Ture Hoko, Riihi hoki, i
nga Whenua Maori, 1876.</head>
    <p>...</p>
  </div>
</body>
</text>
<text
  xml:id="t1-g1-t2"
  xml:lang="en">
  <body
    corresp="#t1-g1-t1-body1"
    xml:id="t1-g1-t2-body1">
  <div
    type="chapter">
    <head>An Act to regulate the Sale, Letting, and Disposal
of Native Lands, 1876.</head>
    <p>...</p>
  </div>
</body>
</text>
</group>
```

In this example a <group> contains two <text>s, each containing the same document in a different language. The correspondance is indicated using <corresp>. The language is indicated using xml:lang, whose value is inherited; both the tag with the <corresp> and the tag pointed to by the <corresp> inherit the value from their immediate parent.

@synch (synchronous) points to elements that are synchronous with the current element.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

@sameAs points to an element that is the same as the current element.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.pointer`

@copyOf points to an element of which the current element is a copy.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.pointer`

Note Any content of the current element should be ignored. Its true content is that of the element being pointed at.

@next points to the next element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.pointer`

@prev (previous) points to the previous element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.pointer`

@exclude points to elements that are in exclusive alternation with the current element.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

@select selects one or more alternants; if one alternant is selected, the ambiguity or uncertainty is marked as resolved. If more than one alternant is selected, the degree of ambiguity or uncertainty is marked as reduced by the number of alternants not selected.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Note This attribute should be placed on an element which is superordinate to all of the alternants from which the selection is being made.

att.handFeatures provides attributes describing aspects of the hand in which a manuscript is written. [11.3.2.1.]

Module tei

Members handNote handShift

Attributes Attributes

@scribe gives a name or other identifier for the scribe believed to be responsible for this hand.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.name`

@scribeRef points to a full description of the scribe concerned, typically supplied by a <person> element elsewhere in the description.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

@script characterizes the particular script or writing style used by this hand, for example *secretary*, *copperplate*, *Chancery*, *Italian*, etc.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.name` separated by whitespace

@scriptRef points to a full description of the script or writing style used by this hand, typically supplied by a <scriptNote> element elsewhere in the description.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

@medium describes the tint or type of ink, e.g. *brown*, or other writing medium, e.g. *pencil*

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

@scope specifies how widely this hand is used in the manuscript.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Legal values are: **sole** only this hand is used throughout the manuscript

major this hand is used through most of the manuscript

minor this hand is used occasionally in the manuscript

Note Usually either `script` or `scriptRef`, and similarly, either `scribe` or `scribeRef`, will be supplied.

att.internetMedia provides attributes for specifying the type of a computer resource using a standard taxonomy.

Module `tei`

Members `att.media[graphic binaryObject]` `ptr ref`

Attributes `Attributes`

@mimeType (MIME media type) specifies the applicable multimedia internet mail extension (MIME) media type

Status `Optional`

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.word` separated by whitespace

Values The value should be a valid MIME media type

Example In this example `mimeType` is used to indicate the URL points to a TEI XML file encoded in UTF-8.

```
<ref
  mimeType="application/tei+xml; charset=UTF-8"
  target="http://tei.svn.sourceforge.net/viewvc/tei/trunk/P5/Source/guidelines-
en.xml"/>
```

Note This attribute class provides attributes for describing a computer resource, typically available over the internet, according to standard taxonomies. At present only a single taxonomy is supported, the Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions Media Type system. This system of typology of media types is defined by the Internet Engineering Task Force in RFC 2046. The list of types is maintained by the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority.

att.interpLike provides attributes for elements which represent a formal analysis or interpretation. [17.2.]

Module `tei`

Members `span spanGrp interp interpGrp`

Attributes `Attributes att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)`

@type indicates what kind of phenomenon is being noted in the passage.

Status `Recommended`

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Sample values include: **image** identifies an image in the passage.

character identifies a character associated with the passage.

theme identifies a theme in the passage.

allusion identifies an allusion to another text.

@inst (instances) points to instances of the analysis or interpretation represented by the current element.

Status `Optional`

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Note The current element should be an analytic one. The element pointed at should be a textual one.

att.lexicographic defines a set of global attributes available on elements in the base tag set for dictionaries. [9.2.]

Module dictionaries

Members entryFree hom sense form orth pron hyph syll gram gen number case per tns mood iType gramGrp pos subc colloc def etym lang lbl xr re oRef oVar pRef pVar

Attributes Attributes att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)

@expand gives an expanded form of information presented more concisely in the dictionary

Status Optional

Datatype `text`

```
<gramGrp>
  <pos>n</pos>
</gramGrp>
```

@norm (normalized) gives a normalized form of information given by the source text in a non-normalized form

Status Optional

Datatype `text`

```
<gramGrp>
  <pos
    norm="noun">n</pos>
</gramGrp>
```

@split gives the list of split values for a merged form

Status Optional

Datatype `text`

@value gives a value which lacks any realization in the printed source text.

Status Optional

Datatype `text`

@orig (original) gives the original string or is the empty string when the element does not appear in the source text.

Status Optional

Datatype `text`

@location provides a reference to an <anchor> element typically elsewhere in the document, but possibly in another document, indicating the original location of this component.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.pointer`

Values a valid identifier for an <anchor> element elsewhere in the current document.

@mergedIn gives a reference to another element, where the original appears as a merged form.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.pointer`

@opt (optional) indicates whether the element is optional or not

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:boolean`

Default false

att.measurement provides attributes to represent a regularized or normalized measurement.

Module tei

Members measure measureGrp

Attributes Attributes

@unit indicates the units used for the measurement, usually using the standard symbol for the desired units.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Suggested values include: **m** (metre) SI base unit of length

kg (kilogram) SI base unit of mass

s (second) SI base unit of time

Hz (hertz) SI unit of frequency

Pa (pascal) SI unit of pressure or stress

Ω (ohm) SI unit of electric resistance

L (litre) 1 dm³

t (tonne) 10³ kg

ha (hectare) 1 hm²

(ångström) 10⁻¹⁰ m

mL (millilitre)

cm (centimetre)

dB (decibel) see remarks, below

kbit (kilobit) 10³ or 1000 bits

Kibit (kibibit) 2¹⁰ or 1024 bits

kB (kilobyte) 10³ or 1000 bytes

KiB (kibibyte) 2¹⁰ or 1024 bytes

MB (megabyte) 10⁶ or 1 000 000 bytes

MiB (mebibyte) 2²⁰ or 1 048 576 bytes

Note If the measurement being represented is not expressed in a particular unit, but rather is a number of discrete items, the unit count should be used, or the unit attribute may be left unspecified. Wherever appropriate, a recognized SI unit name should be used (see further <http://www.bipm.org/en/si/>; <http://physics.nist.gov/cuu/Units/>). The list above is indicative rather than exhaustive.

@quantity specifies the number of the specified units that comprise the measurement

Status Optional

Datatype `data.numeric`

@commodity indicates the substance that is being measured

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.word` separated by whitespace

Note In general, when the commodity is made of discrete entities, the plural form should be used, even when the measurement is of only one of them.

Note This attribute class provides a triplet of attributes that may be used either to regularize the values of the measurement being encoded, or to normalize them with respect to a standard measurement system.

```
<l>So weren't you gonna buy <measure commodity="ice
cream" quantity="0.5" unit="gal">half
  a gallon</measure>, baby</l>
<l>So won't you go and buy <measure commodity="ice
cream" quantity="1.893" unit="L">half
  a gallon</measure>, baby?</l>
```

Note The unit should normally be named using the standard abbreviation for an SI unit (see further <http://www.bipm.org/en/si/>; <http://physics.nist.gov/cuu/Units/>). However, encoders may also specify measurements using informally defined units such as lines or characters.

att.media provides attributes for specifying display and related properties of external media.

Module tei

Members graphic binaryObject

Attributes Attributes att.internetMedia (*@mimeType*)

@width Where the media are displayed, indicates the display width
Status Optional

Datatype `data.outputMeasurement`

@height Where the media are displayed, indicates the display height
Status Optional

Datatype `data.outputMeasurement`

@scale Where the media are displayed, indicates a scale factor to be applied when generating the desired display size
Status Optional

Datatype `data.numeric`

att.milestoneUnit provides an attribute to indicate the type of section which is changing at a specific milestone. [3.10.3. 2.3.6.3. 2.3.6.]

Module core

Members milestone refState

Attributes Attributes

@unit provides a conventional name for the kind of section changing at this milestone.

Status Required

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Suggested values include: **page** physical page breaks (synonymous with the `<pb>` element).

column column breaks.

line line breaks (synonymous with the <lb> element).
book any units termed book, liber, etc.
poem individual poems in a collection.
canto cantos or other major sections of a poem.
speaker changes of speaker or narrator.
stanza stanzas within a poem, book, or canto.
act acts within a play.
scene scenes within a play or act.
section sections of any kind.
absent passages not present in the reference edition.
unnumbered passages present in the text, but not to be included as part of the reference.

```
<milestone
  ed="La"
  n="23"
  unit="Dreissiger"/>
... <milestone
  ed="AV"
  n="24"
  unit="verse"/> ...
```

Note If the milestone marks the beginning of a piece of text not present in the reference edition, the special value *absent* may be used as the value of unit. The normal interpretation is that the reference edition does not contain the text which follows, until the next <milestone> tag for the edition in question is encountered. In addition to the values suggested, other terms may be appropriate (e.g. *Stephanus* for the Stephanus numbers in Plato).

att.naming provides attributes common to elements which refer to named persons, places, organizations etc. [3.5.1. 13.3.5.]

Module tei

Members att.personal[name] rs author editor pubPlace

Attributes Attributes att.canonical (@key, @ref)

@role may be used to specify further information about the entity referenced by this name, for example the occupation of a person, or the status of a place.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

@nymRef (reference to the canonical name) provides a means of locating the canonical form (*nym*) of the names associated with the object named by the element bearing it.

Status Optional

Datatype 1-∞ occurrences of data.pointer separated by whitespace

Note The value must point directly to one or more XML elements by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied, the implication is that the name is associated with several distinct canonical names.

att.patternReplacement provides attributes for regular-expression matching and replacement. [16.2.3. 2.3.6.3. 2.3.6. 2.3.6.2.]

Module header

Members cRefPattern prefixDef

Attributes Attributes

@matchPattern specifies a regular expression against which the values of other attributes can be matched.

Status Required

Datatype `data.pattern`

Values must be a regular expression according to the W3C XML Schema Language

Note Parenthesized groups are used not only for establishing order of precedence and atoms for quantification, but also for creating subpatterns to be referenced by the replacementPattern attribute.

@replacementPattern specifies a ‘replacement pattern’ which, once subpattern substitution has been performed, provides a URI.

Status Required

Datatype `text`

Values Should be the skeleton of a relative or absolute URI, with references to groups in the matchPattern.

Note The strings ‘\$1’ through ‘\$9’ are references to the corresponding group in the regular expression specified by matchPattern (counting open parenthesis, left to right). Processors are expected to replace them with whatever matched the corresponding group in the regular expression. If a digit preceded by a dollar sign is needed in the actual replacement pattern (as opposed to being used as a back reference), the dollar sign must be written as `%24`.

att.personal (attributes for components of names usually, but not necessarily, personal names) common attributes for those elements which form part of a name usually, but not necessarily, a personal name. [13.2.1.]

Module tei

Members name

Attributes Attributes att.naming (*@role*, *@nymRef*) (att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*))

@full indicates whether the name component is given in full, as an abbreviation or simply as an initial.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Legal values are: **yes** the name component is spelled out in full. [Default]

abb (abbreviated) the name component is given in an abbreviated form.

init (initial letter) the name component is indicated only by one initial.

@sort specifies the sort order of the name component in relation to others within the name.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.count`

Values A positive number indicating the sort order.

att.placement provides attributes for describing where on the source page or object a textual element appears. [3.4.3. 11.3.1.4.]

Module tei

Members add label note notatedMusic figure addSpan fw metamark

Attributes Attributes

@place specifies where this item is placed

Status Recommended

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.enumerated` separated by whitespace

Suggested values include: **below** below the line

bottom at the foot of the page

margin in the margin (left, right, or both)

top at the top of the page

opposite on the opposite, i.e. facing, page

overleaf on the other side of the leaf

above above the line

end at the end of e.g. chapter or volume.

inline within the body of the text.

inspace in a predefined space, for example left by an earlier scribe.

```
<add place="margin">[An addition written in the margin]</add>
```

```
<add place="bottom opposite">[An addition written at the foot of the current page and also on the facing page]</add>
```

```
<note place="bottom">Ibid, p.7</note>
```

att.pointing defines a set of attributes used by all elements which point to other elements by means of one or more URI references. [1.3.1.1.2. 3.6.]

Module tei

Members att.pointing.group[linkGrp joinGrp altGrp] gloss term ptr ref note citedRange licence catRef calendar link join oRef oVar pRef pVar substJoin span

Attributes Attributes

@targetLang specifies the language of the content to be found at the destination referenced by target, using a ‘language tag’ generated according to BCP 47.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.language`

Schematron <sch:rule

```
context="tei:[not(self::tei:schemaSpec)][@targetLang]">
```

```
<sch:assert test="count(@target)">@targetLang can only be used if @target is specified.</sch:assert></sch:rule>
```

Values The value must conform to BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a <language> element

with a matching value for its `ident` attribute should be supplied in the TEI Header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain consistent with their (IETF)Internet Engineering Task Force definitions.

```
<linkGrp
  xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1-linkGrp">
  <ptr
    target="pol/UDHR/text.xml#pol_txt_1-head"
    targetLang="pl"
    type="tuv"
    xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1.1-ptr"/>
  <ptr
    target="swh/UDHR/text.xml#swh_txt_1-head"
    targetLang="sw"
    type="tuv"
    xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1.2-ptr"/>
</linkGrp>
```

In the example above, the `<linkGrp>` combines pointers at parallel fragments of the *Universal Declaration of Human Rights*: one of them is in Polish, the other in Swahili.

@target specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI References

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Values One or more syntactically valid URI references, separated by whitespace. Because whitespace is used to separate URIs, no whitespace is permitted inside a single URI. If a whitespace character is required in a URI, it should be escaped with the normal mechanism, e.g. `TEI%20Consortium`.

@evaluate specifies the intended meaning when the target of a pointer is itself a pointer.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Legal values are: **all** if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then the target of that pointer will be taken, and so on, until an element is found which is not a pointer.

one if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then its target (whether a pointer or not) is taken as the target of this pointer.

none no further evaluation of targets is carried out beyond that needed to find the element specified in the pointer's target.

Note If no value is given, the application program is responsible for deciding (possibly on the basis of user input) how far to trace a chain of pointers.

att.pointing.group defines a set of attributes common to all elements which enclose groups of pointer elements. [16.]

Module tei

Members linkGrp joinGrp altGrp

Attributes `att.pointing` (`@targetLang`, `@target`, `@evaluate`) `att.typed` (`@type`, `@subtype`)

@domains optionally specifies the identifiers of the elements within which all elements indicated by the contents of this element lie.

Status Optional

Datatype 2–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Note If this attribute is supplied every element specified as a target must be contained within the element or elements named by it. An application may choose whether or not to report failures to satisfy this constraint as errors, but may not access an element of the right identifier but in the wrong context. If this attribute is not supplied, then target elements may appear anywhere within the target document.

@targFunc (target function) describes the function of each of the values of the target attribute of the enclosed `<link>`, `<join>`, or `<alt>` tags.

Status Optional

Datatype 2–∞ occurrences of `data.word` separated by whitespace

Note The number of separate values must match the number of values in the target attribute in the enclosed `<link>`, `<join>`, or `<alt>` tags (an intermediate `<ptr>` element may be needed to accomplish this). It should also match the number of values in the domains attribute, of the current element, if one has been specified.

att.ranging provides attributes for describing numerical ranges.

Module `tei`

Members `att.dimensions`[`att.damaged`[`damage` `damageSpan`]
`att.editLike`[`att.transcriptional`[`add` `del` `addSpan` `delSpan` `restore` `subst` `substJoin` `mod`
`redo` `retrace` `undo`] `corr` `reg` `gap` `unclear` `name` `date` `time` `expan` `ex` `am` `supplied`
`surplus`] `space`] `num`

Attributes `Attributes`

@atLeast gives a minimum estimated value for the approximate measurement.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.numeric`

@atMost gives a maximum estimated value for the approximate measurement.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.numeric`

@min where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the minimum value observed.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.numeric`

@max where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the maximum value observed.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.numeric`

@confidence specifies the degree of statistical confidence (between zero and one)

that a value falls within the range specified by min and max, or the proportion of observed values that fall within that range.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.probability`

att.resourced provides attributes by which a resource (such as an externally held media file) may be located.

Module tei

Members media graphic

Attributes Attributes

@url (uniform resource locator) specifies the URL from which the media concerned may be obtained.

Status Required

Datatype `data.pointer`

att.responsibility provides attributes indicating who is responsible for something asserted by the markup and the degree of certainty associated with it. [1.]

Module tei

Members att.editLike[att.transcriptional[add del addSpan delSpan restore subst substJoin mod redo retrace undo] corr reg gap unclear name date time expan ex am supplied surplus] att.interpLike[span spanGrp interp interpGrp] sic orig abbr note seg handShift

Attributes Attributes

@cert (certainty) signifies the degree of certainty associated with the intervention or interpretation.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.certainty`

@resp (responsible party) indicates the agency responsible for the intervention or interpretation, for example an editor or transcriber.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Values A pointer to an element typically, but not necessarily, in the document header that is associated with a person asserted as responsible for some aspect of the text's creation, transcription, editing, or encoding.

att.segLike provides attributes for elements used for arbitrary segmentation. [16.3. 17.1.]

Module tei

Members seg s cl phr w m c pc

Attributes Attributes att.datcat (*@datcat*, *@valueDatcat*) att.fragmentable (*@part*)

@function characterizes the function of the segment.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Values For a <cl>, may take values such as coordinate, subject, adverbial etc. For a <phr>, such values as subject, predicate etc. may be more appropriate.

att.sortable provides attributes for elements in lists or groups that are sortable, but whose sorting key cannot be derived mechanically from the element content. [1.]

Module tei

Members term list item bibl biblStruct listBibl idno biblFull listChange superEntry entry entryFree

Attributes Attributes

@sortKey supplies the sort key for this element in an index, list or group which contains it.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.word`

Values a sequence of characters which, when sorted with the other values, will produced the desired order; specifics of sort key construction are application-dependent.

David's other principal backer, Josiah

ha-Kohen <index

 indexName="NAMES">

 <term

 sortKey="Azarya_Josiah_Kohen">Josiah ha-Kohen b.

Azarya</term>

</index> b. Azarya, son of one of the last gaons of Sura was David's own first cousin.

Note The sort key is used to determine the sequence and grouping of entries in an index. Dictionary order often differs from the collation sequence of machine-readable character sets; in English-language dictionaries, an entry for *4-H* will often appear alphabetized under 'fourh', and *McCoy* may be alphabetized under 'maccoy', while *A1*, *A4*, and *A5* may all appear in numeric order 'alphabetized' between 'a-' and 'AA'. The sort key is required if the orthography of the dictionary entry does not suffice to determine its location.

att.source provides attributes for pointing to the source of a bibliographic reference. [3.3.3. 8.3.4.]

Module tei

Members quote q

Attributes Attributes

@source (pointer to a bibliographical source reference) provides a pointer to the bibliographical source from which a quotation or citation is drawn.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Values Must point to one or more bibliographic elements in the TEI header or elsewhere

Example

```
<p>
As Willard McCarty (<bibl xml:id="mcc_2012">2012, p.2</bibl>)
tells us, <quote source="#mcc_2012">'Collaboration' is a
problematic and should be a contested term.</quote>
</p>
```

Example

```
<p>
<quote source="#chicago_15_ed">Grammatical theories
are in flux, and the more we learn, the less we
seem to know.</quote>
</p>
<bibl xml:id="chicago_15_ed">
<title level="m">The Chicago Manual of Style</title>,
<edition>15th edition</edition>.
<pubPlace>Chicago</pubPlace>:
<publisher>University of Chicago Press</publisher>
(<date>2003</date>),
<biblScope type="pp">p.147</biblScope>.
</bibl>
```

att.spanning provides attributes for elements which delimit a span of text by pointing mechanisms rather than by enclosing it. [1.3.1.]

Module tei

Members index milestone gb pb lb cb addSpan damageSpan delSpan metamark mod redo retrace undo

Attributes Attributes

@spanTo indicates the end of a span initiated by the element bearing this attribute.

Status Optional

Datatype data.pointer

Schematron The **@spanTo** attribute must point to an element following the current element `<sch:rule context="tei:*[@spanTo]">`

`<sch:assert`

`test="following:*[@xml:id=substring(current()/@target,2)]">`The element indicated by **@spanTo** must follow the current element

`<sch:name/> </sch:assert></sch:rule>`

Schematron La valeur de **@spanTo** doit identifier un element dans le document actuel `<sch:rule context="tei:*[@spanTo]">`

`<sch:assert test="id(substring(@spanTo,2))">`**@spanTo** on

`<sch:name/>` must point to the identifier of some element in this document `</sch:assert></sch:rule>`

Values points to an element following this one in the current document.

Note The span is defined as running in document order from the start of the content of the pointing element to the end of the content of the element pointed to by the **spanTo** attribute (if any). If no value is supplied for the attribute, the assumption is

that the span is coextensive with the pointing element. If no content is present, the assumption is that the starting point of the span is immediately following the element itself.

att.styleDef groups elements which specify the name of a formal definition language used to provide formatting or rendition information.

Module tei

Members styleDefDecl

Attributes Attributes

@scheme identifies the language used to describe the rendition.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Legal values are: **css** Cascading Stylesheet Language

xslfo Extensible Stylesheet Language Formatting Objects

free Informal free text description

other A user-defined rendition description language

Note If no formal definition language is supplied or implied, the default assumption is that CSS is in use.

att.tableDecoration provides attributes used to decorate rows or cells of a table.
[14.]

Module tei

Members row cell

Attributes Attributes

@role indicates the kind of information held in this cell or in each cell of this row.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Suggested values include: **label** labelling or descriptive information only.

data data values.[Default]

Note When this attribute is specified on a row, its value is the default for all cells in this row. When specified on a cell, its value overrides any default specified by the role attribute of the parent <row> element.

@rows indicates the number of rows occupied by this cell or row.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.count`

Default 1

Values A number; a value greater than one indicates that this cell (or row) spans several rows.

Note Where several cells span several rows, it may be more convenient to use nested tables.

@cols (columns) indicates the number of columns occupied by this cell or row.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.count`

Default 1

Values A number; a value greater than one indicates that this cell or row spans several columns.

Note Where an initial cell spans an entire row, it may be better treated as a heading.

att.timed provides attributes common to those elements which have a duration in time, expressed either absolutely or by reference to an alignment map. [8.3.5.]

Module tei

Members media binaryObject

Attributes Attributes

@start indicates the location within a temporal alignment at which this element begins.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.pointer`

Note If no value is supplied, the element is assumed to follow the immediately preceding element at the same hierarchic level.

@end indicates the location within a temporal alignment at which this element ends.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.pointer`

Note If no value is supplied, the element is assumed to precede the immediately following element at the same hierarchic level.

att.transcriptional provides attributes specific to elements encoding authorial or scribal intervention in a text when transcribing manuscript or similar sources. [1.]

Module tei

Members add del addSpan delSpan restore subst substJoin mod redo retrace undo

Attributes Attributes att.editLike (*@evidence*, *@source*, *@instant*) (att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@precision*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*))) (att.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

@hand signifies the hand of the agent which made the intervention.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.pointer`

Values must refer to a <handNote> element, typically declared in the document header (see section 11.3.2.1.).

@status indicates the effect of the intervention, for example in the case of a deletion, strikeouts which include too much or too little text, or in the case of an addition, an insertion which duplicates some of the text already present.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Sample values include: **duplicate** all of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original, whether the duplication is word-for-word or less exact.

duplicate-partial part of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original

excessStart some text at the beginning of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.

excessEnd some text at the end of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.

shortStart some text at the beginning of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.

shortEnd some text at the end of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.

partial some text in the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.

unremarkable the deletion is not faulty.[Default]

Note Status information on each deletion is needed rather rarely except in critical editions from authorial manuscripts; status information on additions is even less common. Marking a deletion or addition as faulty is inescapably an interpretive act; the usual test applied in practice is the linguistic acceptability of the text with and without the letters or words in question.

@cause documents the presumed cause for the intervention.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Legal values are: **fix** repeated for the purpose of fixation

unclear repeated to clarify a previously illegible or badly written text or mark

@seq (sequence) assigns a sequence number related to the order in which the encoded features carrying this attribute are believed to have occurred.

Status Mandatory when applicable

Datatype `data.count`

att.translatable provides attributes used to indicate the status of a translatable portion of an ODD document.

Module `tei`

Members `desc gloss`

Attributes `Attributes`

@versionDate specifies the date on which the source text was extracted and sent to the translator

Status Optional

Datatype `data.temporal.w3c`

Note The `versionDate` attribute can be used to determine whether a translation might need to be revisited, by comparing the modification date on the containing file with the `versionDate` value on the translation. If the file has changed, changelogs can be checked to see whether the source text has been modified since the translation was made.

att.typed provides attributes which can be used to classify or subclassify elements in any way. [1.3.1.]

Module tei

Members att.pointing.group[linkGrp joinGrp altGrp] quote cit gloss term corr reg add del name rs measureGrp date time ptr ref label head note media binaryObject milestone gb pb lb cb bibl biblStruct listBibl relatedItem lg application change text floatingText div trailer link ab anchor seg join alt g charProp mapping gramGrp colloc re notatedMusic figure surface surfaceGrp zone addSpan damage damageSpan delSpan restore line mod s cl phr m c pc

Attributes Attributes

@type characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

```
<div
  type="verse">
  <head>Night in Tarras</head>
  <lg
    type="stanza">
    <l>At evening tramping on the hot white road</l>
    <l>...</l>
  </lg>
  <lg
    type="stanza">
    <l>A wind sprang up from nowhere as the sky</l>
    <l>...</l>
  </lg>
</div>
```

Note The type attribute is present on a number of elements, not all of which are members of att.typed, usually because these elements restrict the possible values for the attribute in a specific way.

@subtype provides a sub-categorization of the element, if needed

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Note The subtype attribute may be used to provide any sub-classification for the element additional to that provided by its type attribute.

Schematron `<sch:rule context="*[@subtype]"> <sch:assert test="@type">The <sch:name/> element should not be categorized in detail with @subtype unless also categorized in general with @type</sch:assert></sch:rule>`

Note When appropriate, values from an established typology should be used. Alternatively a typology may be defined in the associated TEI header. If values are to be taken from a project-specific list, this should be defined using the `<valList>` element in the project-specific schema description, as described in 23.3.1.4. .

4 Macros

data.certainty defines the range of attribute values expressing a degree of certainty.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- purpose/@degree

Declaration `data.certainty = "high" | "medium" | "low" | "unknown"`

Note Certainty may be expressed by one of the predefined symbolic values high, medium, or low. The value unknown should be used in cases where the encoder does not wish to assert an opinion about the matter. For more precise indication, data.probability may be used instead or in addition.

data.code defines the range of attribute values expressing a coded value by means of a pointer to some other element which contains a definition for it.

Module tei

Used by

Declaration `data.code = data.word`

Note It will usually be the case that the item pointed to is to be found somewhere else in the current TEI document, typically in the header, but this is not mandatory.

data.count defines the range of attribute values used for a non-negative integer value used as a count.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- refState/@length
- sense/@level
- table/@rows
- table/@cols
- tagUsage/@occurs
- tagUsage/@withId
- zone/@rotate

Declaration `data.count = xsd:nonNegativeInteger`

Note Only positive integer values (including zero) are permitted

data.duration.iso defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using ISO 8601 standard formats

Module tei

Used by

Declaration

`data.duration.iso = token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-" } }`

Example

```
<time dur-iso="PT0,75H">three-quarters of an hour</time>
```

Example

```
<date dur-iso="P1,5D">a day and a half</date>
```

Example

```
<date dur-iso="P14D">a fortnight</date>
```

Example

```
<time dur-iso="PT0.02S">20 ms</time>
```

Note A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the last, which may have a decimal component (using either . or , as the decimal point; the latter is preferred). If any number is 0, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator T must precede the first ‘time’ number-letter pair. For complete details, see ISO 8601 *Data elements and interchange formats — Information interchange — Representation of dates and times*.

data.duration.w3c defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using W3C datatypes.

Module tei

Used by

Declaration `data.duration.w3c = xsd:duration`

Example

```
<time dur="PT45M">forty-five minutes</time>
```

Example

```
<date dur="P1DT12H">a day and a half</date>
```

Example

```
<date dur="P7D">a week</date>
```

Example

```
<time dur="PT0.02S">20 ms</time>
```

Note A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the S number, which may have a decimal component (using . as the decimal point). If any number is 0, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator T must precede the first ‘time’ number-letter pair. For complete details, see the W3C specification.

data.enumerated defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single XML name taken from a list of documented possibilities.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- abbr/@type
- alt/@mode
- altGrp/@mode
- availability/@status
- biblScope/@unit
- biblScope/@type
- channel/@mode
- citedRange/@unit
- constitution/@type
- correction/@status
- correction/@method
- derivation/@type
- distinct/@type
- divGen/@type
- domain/@type
- factuality/@type
- form/@type
- formula/@notation
- fs/@type
- fsDecl/@type
- fsdLink/@type
- fw/@type
- gap/@agent
- geoDecl/@datum
- gram/@type
- hyphenation/@eol
- iType/@type
- idno/@type
- interaction/@type
- interaction/@active
- interaction/@passive
- join/@scope
- lbl/@type
- list/@type
- measure/@type
- normalization/@method
- num/@type

- oRef/@type
- oVar/@type
- orth/@type
- orth/@extent
- pc/@force
- pc/@unit
- preparedness/@type
- pron/@extent
- pron/@notation
- purpose/@type
- q/@type
- quotation/@marks
- rendition/@scheme
- rendition/@scope
- space/@dim
- stage/@type
- surface/@attachment
- teiHeader/@type
- timeline/@unit
- title/@type
- title/@level
- titlePage/@type
- titlePart/@type
- unclear/@agent
- usg/@type
- vColl/@org
- vMerge/@org
- when/@unit
- xr/@type

Declaration `data.enumerated = data.name`

Note Attributes using this datatype must contain a word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name>): for example they cannot include whitespace or begin with digits. Typically, the list of documented possibilities will be provided (or exemplified) by a value list in the associated attribute specification, expressed with a <valList> element.

data.language defines the range of attribute values used to identify a particular combination of human language and writing system. [6.1.]

Module tei

Used by Element:

- language/@ident

- textLang/@mainLang
- textLang/@otherLangs

Declaration `data.language = xsd:language`

Note The values for this attribute are language ‘tags’ as defined in BCP 47. Currently BCP 47 comprises RFC 4646 and RFC 4647; over time, other IETF documents may succeed these as the best current practice. A ‘language tag’, per BCP 47, is assembled from a sequence of components or *subtags* separated by the hyphen character (-, U+002D). The tag is made of the following subtags, in the following order. Every subtag except the first is optional. If present, each occurs only once, except the fourth and fifth components (variant and extension), which are repeatable.

language The IANA-registered code for the language. This is almost always the same as the ISO 639 2-letter language code if there is one. The list of available registered language subtags can be found at <http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry>. It is recommended that this code be written in lower case.

script The ISO 15924 code for the script. These codes consist of 4 letters, and it is recommended they be written with an initial capital, the other three letters in lower case. The canonical list of codes is maintained by the Unicode Consortium, and is available at <http://unicode.org/iso15924/iso15924-codes.html>. The IETF recommends this code be omitted unless it is necessary to make a distinction you need.

region Either an ISO 3166 country code or a UN M.49 region code that is registered with IANA (not all such codes are registered, e.g. UN codes for economic groupings or codes for countries for which there is already an ISO 3166 2-letter code are not registered). The former consist of 2 letters, and it is recommended they be written in upper case. The list of codes can be found at <http://www.iso.org/iso/en/prods-services/iso3166ma/02iso-3166-code-lists/index.html>. The latter consist of 3 digits; the list of codes can be found at <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/methods/m49/m49.htm>.

variant An IANA-registered variation. These codes ‘are used to indicate additional, well-recognized variations that define a language or its dialects that are not covered by other available subtags’.

extension An extension has the format of a single letter followed by a hyphen followed by additional subtags. These exist to allow for future extension to BCP 47, but as of this writing no such extensions are in use.

private use An extension that uses the initial subtag of the single letter *x* (i.e., starts with *x-*) has no meaning except as negotiated among the parties involved. These should be used with great care, since they interfere with the interoperability that use of RFC 4646 is intended to promote. In order for a document that makes use of these subtags to be TEI conformant, a corresponding <language> element must be present in the TEI header.

There are two exceptions to the above format. First, there are language tags in the IANA registry that do not match the above syntax, but are present because they have been ‘grandfathered’ from previous specifications. Second, an entire language tag can consist of only a private use subtag. These tags start with *x-*, and do not need to follow any further rules established by the IETF and endorsed by these

Guidelines. Like all language tags that make use of private use subtags, the language in question must be documented in a corresponding <language> element in the TEI header. Examples include

sn Shona

zh-TW Taiwanese

zh-Hant-HK Chinese written in traditional script as used in Hong Kong

en-SL English as spoken in Sierra Leone

pl Polish

es-MX Spanish as spoken in Mexico

es-419 Spanish as spoken in Latin America

The W3C Internationalization Activity has published a useful introduction to BCP 47, Language tags in HTML and XML.

data.name defines the range of attribute values expressed as an XML Name.

Module tei

Used by data.enumeratedElement:

- application/@ident
- f/@name
- fDecl/@name
- fsDecl/@baseTypes
- index/@indexName
- join/@result
- joinGrp/@result
- prefixDef/@ident
- tagUsage/@gi

Declaration `data.name = xsd:Name`

Note Attributes using this datatype must contain a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name>): for example they cannot include whitespace or begin with digits.

data.namespace defines the range of attribute values used to indicate XML namespaces as defined by the W3C Namespaces in XML Technical Recommendation.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- namespace/@name

Declaration `data.namespace = xsd:anyURI`

Note The range of syntactically valid values is defined by RFC 3986 *Uniform Resource Identifier (URI): Generic Syntax*

data.numeric defines the range of attribute values used for numeric values.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- num/@value
- numeric/@value
- numeric/@max

Declaration

```
data.numeric =  
  xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\\-?[\\d]+/\\-?[\\d]+)" } | xsd:decimal
```

Note Any numeric value, represented as a decimal number, in floating point format, or as a ratio. To represent a floating point number, expressed in scientific notation, ‘E notation’, a variant of ‘exponential notation’, may be used. In this format, the value is expressed as two numbers separated by the letter E. The first number, the significand (sometimes called the mantissa) is given in decimal format, while the second is an integer. The value is obtained by multiplying the mantissa by 10 the number of times indicated by the integer. Thus the value represented in decimal notation as 1000.0 might be represented in scientific notation as 10E3. A value expressed as a ratio is represented by two integer values separated by a solidus (/) character. Thus, the value represented in decimal notation as 0.5 might be represented as a ratio by the string 1/2.

data.outputMeasurement defines a range of values for use in specifying the size of an object that is intended for display on the web.

Module tei

Used by

Declaration

```
data.outputMeasurement =  
  token  
  {  
    pattern = "[\\-+]?\\d+(\\.\\d+)?(\\%|cm|mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|gd|rem|vw|vh|vm)"  
  }
```

Example

```
<figure>  
  <head>The TEI Logo</head>  
  <figDesc>Stylized yellow angle brackets with the letters  
<mentioned>TEI</mentioned> in  
  between and <mentioned>text encoding initiative</mentioned> underneath,  
  all on a white  
  background.</figDesc>  
  <graphic  
    height="600px"  
    url="http://www.tei-c.org/logos/TEI-600.jpg"  
    width="600px"/>  
</figure>
```

Note These values map directly onto the values used by XSL-FO and CSS. For definitions of the units see those specifications; at the time of this writing the most complete list is in the CSS3 working draft.

data.pattern (regular expression pattern) defines attribute values which are expressed as a regular expression.

Module tei

Used by

Declaration `data.pattern = token`

Note A regular expression, often called a *pattern*, is an expression that describes a set of strings. They are usually used to give a concise description of a set, without having to list all elements. For example, the set containing the three strings *Handel*, *Händel*, and *Haendel* can be described by the pattern `H(ä|ae?)ndel` (or alternatively, it is said that the pattern `H(ä|ae?)ndel` *matches* each of the three strings)

data.point defines the data type used to express a point in cartesian space.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- zone/@points

Declaration

```
data.point = token { pattern = "(\\-?[0-9]+\\.?[0-9]*,\\-?[0-9]+\\.?[0-9]*)" }
```

Example

```
<facsimile>
  <surface
    lrx="400"
    lry="280"
    ulx="0"
    uly="0">
    <zone points="220,100 300,210 170,250 123,234">
      <graphic url="handwriting.png" />
    </zone>
  </surface>
</facsimile>
```

Note A point is defined by two numeric values, which may be expressed in any notation permitted.

data.pointer defines the range of attribute values used to provide a single URI pointer to any other resource, either within the current document or elsewhere.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- alt/@target
- alt/@targets
- catRef/@scheme
- change/@target
- classCode/@scheme

- f/@fVal
- fs/@feats
- fsdLink/@target
- g/@ref
- gap/@hand
- handShift/@new
- join/@targets
- keywords/@scheme
- link/@targets
- metamark/@target
- normalization/@source
- note/@targetEnd
- pc/@resp
- redo/@target
- relatedItem/@target
- space/@resp
- span/@from
- span/@to
- tagUsage/@render
- timeline/@origin
- unclear/@hand
- undo/@target
- w/@msd
- w/@resp
- w/@lemmaRef
- when/@since

Declaration `data.pointer = xsd:anyURI`

Note The range of syntactically valid values is defined by RFC 3986 *Uniform Resource Identifier (URI): Generic Syntax*. Note that the values themselves are encoded using RFC 3987 *Internationalized Resource Identifiers (IRIs) mapping to URIs*. For example, `https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/%` is encoded as `https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/%25` while `http://موقع.وزارة-الاتصالات.مصر/` is encoded as `http://xn--4gbrim.xn----rmckbbajlc6dj7bxne2c.xn--wgbh1c/`

data.probability defines the range of attribute values expressing a probability.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- alt/@weights

Declaration

```
data.probability = xsd:double { minInclusive = "0" maxInclusive = "1" }
```

Note Probability is expressed as a real number between 0 and 1; 0 representing *certainly false* and 1 representing *certainly true*.

data.temporal.iso defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the international standard *Data elements and interchange formats – Information interchange – Representation of dates and times*.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- pc/@time
- w/@time

Declaration

```
data.temporal.iso =
  xsd:date
  | xsd:gYear
  | xsd:gMonth
  | xsd:gDay
  | xsd:gYearMonth
  | xsd:gMonthDay
  | xsd:time
  | xsd:dateTime
  | token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRTWYZ/:\-]+" }
```

Note If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the dateTime representation should be used. For all representations for which ISO 8601 describes both a *basic* and an *extended* format, these Guidelines recommend use of the extended format. While ISO 8601 permits the use of both **00:00** and **24:00** to represent midnight, these Guidelines strongly recommend against the use of **24:00**.

data.temporal.w3c defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the *W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes* specification.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- docDate/@when
- when/@absolute

Declaration

```
data.temporal.w3c =
  xsd:date
  | xsd:gYear
  | xsd:gMonth
  | xsd:gDay
  | xsd:gYearMonth
  | xsd:gMonthDay
  | xsd:time
  | xsd:dateTime
```

Note If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the `dateTime` representation should be used.

data.text defines the range of attribute values used to express some kind of identifying string as a single sequence of unicode characters possibly including whitespace.

Module `tei`

Used by Element:

- `distinct/@time`
- `distinct/@space`
- `distinct/@social`

Declaration `data.text = string`

Note Attributes using this datatype must contain a single ‘token’ in which whitespace and other punctuation characters are permitted.

data.truthValue defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value.

Module `tei`

Used by Element:

- `binary/@value`
- `listChange/@ordered`
- `note/@anchored`
- `numeric/@trunc`
- `pc/@pre`
- `surface/@flipping`

Declaration `data.truthValue = xsd:boolean`

Note The possible values of this datatype are 1 or true, or 0 or false.

Note This datatype applies only for cases where uncertainty is inappropriate; if the attribute concerned may have a value other than true or false, e.g. unknown, or inapplicable, it should have the extended version of this datatype: `data.xTruthValue`.

data.version defines the range of attribute values which may be used to specify a TEI version number.

Module `tei`

Used by Element:

- `TEI/@version`
- `teiCorpus/@version`
- `unicodeName/@version`

Declaration

`data.version = token { pattern = "[\d]+(\.[\d]+){0,2}" }`

Note The value of this attribute follows the pattern specified by the Unicode consortium for its version number (<http://unicode.org/version>). A version number contains digits and fullstop characters only. The first number supplied identifies the major version number. A second and third number, for minor and sub-minor version numbers, may also be supplied.

data.word defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single word or token.

Module tei

Used by data.codeElement:

- biblScope/@from
- biblScope/@to
- binaryObject/@encoding
- citedRange/@from
- citedRange/@to
- gap/@reason
- m/@baseForm
- media/@mimeType
- metamark/@function
- supplied/@reason
- surplus/@reason
- symbol/@value
- unclear/@reason
- vLabel/@name

Declaration

```
data.word = token { pattern = "(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+" }
```

Note Attributes using this datatype must contain a single ‘word’ which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace.

data.xTruthValue (extended truth value) defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value which may be unknown.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- said/@aloud
- said/@direct

Declaration

```
data.xTruthValue = xsd:boolean | "unknown" | "inapplicable"
```

Note In cases where where uncertainty is inappropriate, use the datatype data.TruthValue.

macro.limitedContent (paragraph content) defines the content of prose elements that are not used for transcription of extant materials. [1.3.]

Module tei

Used by desc fDescr figDesc fsDescr meeting rendition tagUsage

Declaration

```
macro.limitedContent = ( text | model.limitedPhrase | model.inter )*
```

macro.paraContent (paragraph content) defines the content of paragraphs and similar elements. [1.3.]

Module tei

Used by ab add case cell colloc corr damage def del docEdition emph gen gram hi hyph iType imprimatur l lang lbl mod mood number orig orth p per pos pron ref reg restore retrace seg sic signed stress subc supplied surplus syll title titlePart tns unclear usg

Declaration

```
macro.paraContent =  
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.inter | model.global | lg )*
```

macro.phraseSeq (phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and phrase-level elements. [1.4.1.]

Module tei

Used by abbr addrLine author biblScope citedRange cl dateline distinct distributor docAuthor docDate edition editor email expan extent foreign fw geoDecl gloss headItem headLabel label measure mentioned name num phr pubPlace publisher rs s salute soCalled speaker street term textLang trailer

Declaration

```
macro.phraseSeq = ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global )*
```

macro.phraseSeq.limited (limited phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and those phrase-level elements that are not typically used for transcribing extant documents. [1.4.1.]

Module tei

Used by activity authority channel classCode constitution derivation domain factuality funder interaction language locale preparedness principal purpose resp span sponsor

Declaration

```
macro.phraseSeq.limited = ( text | model.limitedPhrase | model.global )*
```

macro.specialPara ('special' paragraph content) defines the content model of elements such as notes or list items, which either contain a series of component-level

elements or else have the same structure as a paragraph, containing a series of phrase-level and inter-level elements. [1.3.]

Module tei

Used by change handNote item licence metamark note q quote said stage

Declaration

```
macro.specialPara =  
  (  
    text  
    | model.gLike      | model.phrase    | model.inter    | model.divPart  | model.global
```

macro.xtext (extended text) defines a sequence of character data and gaiji elements.

Module tei

Used by c ex mapping string value

Declaration `macro.xtext = (text | model.gLike)*`